ISBN: 978-93-48620-25-5

Emerging Trends in Pharma and Biomedical Science
Volume II

Editors:
Dr. Aarti Sachin Zanwar
Dr. Emad Salaam Abood Shlakaa
Dr. Raghad Ahmed Hussien Alshamary
Dr. Shrikant Verma

Bhumi Publishing, India

First Edition: June 2025

Emerging Trends in Pharma and Biomedical Science Volume II

(ISBN: 978-93-48620-25-5)

Editors

Dr. Aarti Sachin Zanwar

Department of Pharmacy,

Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be

University, Piparia, Waghodia, Gujarat

Dr. Emad Salaam Abood Shlakaa

Department of Medical Physics,

University of Hilla,

Iraq

Dr. Raghad Ahmed

Hussien Alshamary

Department of Micobiology,

University of Hilla,

Iraq

Dr. Shrikant Verma

Department of Personalized and

Molecular Medicine,

Era University,

Lucknow, U.P.

Bhumi Publishing

June 2025

Title: Emerging Trends in Pharma and Biomedical Science Volume II

Editors: Dr. Aarti Sachin Zanwar, Dr. Emad Salaam Abood Shlakaa,
Dr. Raghad Ahmed Hussien Alshamary, Dr. Shrikant Verma

First Edition: June 2025

ISBN: 978-93-48620-25-5

Published by:

Bhumi Publishing

BHUMI PUBLISHING

Nigave Khalasa, Tal – Karveer, Dist – Kolhapur, Maharashtra, INDIA 416 207

E-mail: bhumipublishing@gmail.com

PREFACE

The fields of pharmaceutical and biomedical sciences are witnessing unprecedented growth and transformation in the 21st century. With the advent of cutting-edge technologies, personalized medicine, advanced drug delivery systems, biotechnological innovations, and a deeper understanding of disease mechanisms, researchers and practitioners are redefining healthcare every day.

This book, Emerging Trends in Pharma and Biomedical Science, is a humble yet focused attempt to compile recent developments, novel methodologies, and evolving perspectives that are shaping these dynamic disciplines. The chapters included herein cover diverse topics ranging from innovative drug discovery approaches and nanotechnology-based therapeutics to breakthroughs in diagnostics, regenerative medicine, and translational research. Each contribution has been thoughtfully curated to provide readers with both foundational insights and glimpses of the future directions these fields are poised to take.

This compilation aims to serve as a valuable resource for students, educators, researchers, and industry professionals alike, inspiring them to explore new ideas, foster interdisciplinary collaborations, and contribute to the advancement of science and healthcare. We sincerely hope that the collective efforts of the contributing authors and editors will ignite curiosity and encourage further research and innovation.

We express our heartfelt gratitude to all the authors, reviewers, and supporters whose dedication and expertise have made this book possible. It is our aspiration that this work will spark meaningful dialogue and provide guidance to those striving to address the ever-evolving challenges in pharma and biomedical science for the betterment of society.

- Editors

TABLE OF CONTENT

ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE AND MACHINE LEARNING IN DRUG FORMULATION AND DEVELOPMENT

Mamta Kumari*, Niyati Shah, Piyushkumar Sadhu, Chitrali Talele
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara-391760, Gujarat
*Corresponding author E-mail: mamtastar36@gmail.com

Abstract:

Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Machine Learning (ML) are redefining the landscape of pharmaceutical sciences by introducing data-driven, predictive, and automated approaches to drug formulation and development. These technologies are revolutionizing how pharmaceutical scientists design formulations, predict drug-excipient interactions, and optimize process parameters. AI and ML algorithms, including neural networks, decision trees, support vector machines, and deep learning models, can analyze vast datasets from preclinical studies, high-throughput screening, and formulation experiments to uncover hidden patterns and correlations that would be difficult to detect using conventional methods. In drug formulation, ML models assist in predicting critical quality attributes (CQAs), excipient compatibility, dissolution profiles, and stability outcomes, significantly reducing the time and cost associated with empirical experimentation. AI also enables real-time optimization through Quality by Design (QbD) frameworks, helping scientists make informed decisions and achieve robust product designs. In the realm of drug development, AI facilitates virtual screening, lead optimization, and pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic (PK/PD) modeling, accelerating the identification of viable drug candidates. This chapter provides a comprehensive overview of the role of AI and ML in the pharmaceutical domain, highlighting current applications, successful case studies, and the tools and platforms supporting these technologies. It also discusses regulatory considerations, challenges in data integration and model validation, and future perspectives. By embracing AI-driven approaches, the pharmaceutical industry stands poised to enhance formulation accuracy, reduce development timelines, and personalize therapeutic solutions for improved patient outcomes.

Keywords: Artificial Intelligence, Machine Learning, Predictive Modeling, Quality by Design, Personalized Medicine

1. Introduction:

The pharmaceutical industry stands at the cusp of a technological revolution, driven by the integration of Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Machine Learning (ML) into every stage of drug formulation and development. Traditionally, the process of developing new pharmaceutical compounds has been time-consuming, labor-intensive, and expensive, often taking over a decade and costing billions of dollars to bring a single drug to market. However, the advent of AI and

ML technologies is rapidly transforming this landscape by enabling data-driven decision-making, reducing developmental timelines, and significantly improving the success rate of drug candidates. AI is the ability of machines to carry out tasks that normally demand human cognitive functions like reasoning, decision-making, and problem-solving [1]. ML, a branch of AI, focuses on developing algorithms that can learn from extensive datasets, recognize patterns, and generate predictions without the need for explicit programming. In the pharmaceutical context, these technologies offer a powerful means of analyzing complex biological, chemical, and clinical data to uncover insights that would be difficult or impossible to detect using traditional methods. By harnessing the computational power of AI and the pattern recognition abilities of ML, researchers can now predict molecular properties, identify promising drug candidates, optimize formulation parameters, and design more effective clinical trials [2]. These innovations are not only streamlining the drug development pipeline but also paving the way for personalized and precision medicine approaches. As a result, AI and ML are emerging as essential tools for pharmaceutical scientists seeking to enhance drug efficacy, reduce costs, and improve patient outcomes in an increasingly competitive and complex healthcare environment [3].

2. Fundamentals of AL and ML

AI is an expansive and interdisciplinary domain focused on creating systems that can execute functions traditionally associated with human intelligence. These functions include learning, reasoning, language comprehension, problem-solving, and making informed decisions. AI can be broadly classified into two categories: narrow AI, which is tailored to handle specific tasks, and general AI, which aims to replicate the full range of human cognitive abilities. In the pharmaceutical sciences, AI is primarily applied in the form of narrow AI to address focused challenges such as molecular modeling, data mining, and predictive analytics. ML, a key branch of AI, focuses on creating algorithms that enable systems to learn from data and enhance their performance progressively, without the need for manual programming for every individual task. ML algorithms process vast and diverse datasets to uncover hidden patterns, relationships, and trends. These insights enable systems to make data-driven predictions or decisions with increasing accuracy as more data becomes available [4].

In the context of pharmaceutics, AI and ML are revolutionizing the drug development and formulation landscape. They are employed to manage and interpret complex datasets derived from chemical libraries, clinical trials, biological assays, and patient records. For example, ML models can predict the solubility, permeability, and stability of compounds, assisting researchers in identifying and focusing on the most promising candidates for further development [5]. Furthermore, AI-powered platforms can assist in the rational design of drug delivery systems by simulating interactions between drugs and excipients, thereby optimizing formulation strategies. These technologies are vital for continuously monitoring production processes and maintaining

quality standards throughout manufacturing. By enabling a more efficient, predictive, and precise approach to research and development, AI and ML help reduce experimental errors, accelerate innovation, and support data-informed decisions throughout the pharmaceutical product lifecycle.

3. Applications in Drug Formulation

AI and ML are playing a transformative role in the field of drug formulation by streamlining complex processes, enhancing precision, and reducing development timelines. Their applications span various stages of formulation development, each contributing to more efficient, cost-effective, and targeted pharmaceutical products.

- **Predictive modeling:** It is a powerful application of AI and ML in the field of drug formulation. It enables researchers to forecast the behavior and characteristics of drug compounds based on existing experimental and theoretical data. By analyzing patterns within large datasets, predictive models can estimate key physicochemical properties of drug candidates such as solubility, permeability, and chemical stability under a variety of conditions. This approach significantly streamlines the drug development process by identifying potential formulation issues before they arise in laboratory settings [6]. For instance, predictive models can simulate how a drug will respond to changes in pH, temperature, or humidity, providing valuable insights into its shelf-life and suitability for different dosage forms. As a result, scientists can design formulations more efficiently, reducing dependency on trial-and-error experiments and saving both time and resources. Predictive modeling supports the development of personalized medicine by helping formulate drugs tailored to specific patient profiles or disease conditions [7]. Overall, integrating predictive modeling into drug formulation enhances decision-making, optimizes formulation strategies, and accelerates the journey from lab to market.
- **Excipient selection:** Choosing the right excipients is crucial for ensuring the safety, efficacy, and stability of a pharmaceutical formulation. Traditionally, this process involves trial-and-error experimentation, which can be labor-intensive and inefficient. AI and ML streamline excipient selection by analyzing extensive databases of formulation outcomes to identify patterns and correlations between specific drug molecules and excipients. These models can recommend optimal excipients that enhance drug solubility, improve bioavailability, control release profiles, and even increase patient acceptability through taste masking or texture modification. This data-driven approach accelerates the formulation process while reducing material waste and development costs [8].
- **Process optimization:** Manufacturing drug products involves multiple variables, including temperature, mixing speed, granulation time, and drying conditions, all of which can impact product quality. AI-driven tools, such as neural networks and genetic algorithms, are used to optimize these variables in real time. By continuously monitoring

and analyzing data from manufacturing processes, these tools can predict deviations and suggest adjustments to maintain consistent product quality. This not only enhances batch-to-batch uniformity but also aligns with the principles of QbD and Process Analytical Technology (PAT), leading to greater operational efficiency and regulatory compliance [9].

Together, these applications underscore how AI and ML are revolutionizing drug formulation by making the process more predictive, precise, and intelligent. Their integration into formulation workflows supports the creation of high-quality, patient-centered therapeutics that are developed faster and more sustainably than ever before.

4. Applications in Drug Development

The integration of AI and ML into drug development has revolutionized the way pharmaceutical research is conducted. These technologies enable data-driven decision-making across all stages of the drug development lifecycle from target discovery to clinical trials resulting in more efficient, cost-effective, and successful therapeutic innovations. Below are key areas where AI and ML have demonstrated transformative impact:

- **Target identification:** It is the foundational step in drug discovery, involving the detection of biological molecules (such as proteins, genes, or RNA sequences) that are critical to disease progression. AI and ML significantly enhance this process by analyzing large-scale biological datasets, including genomics, proteomics, and transcriptomics. Machine learning algorithms can detect hidden patterns, correlations, and associations that would be difficult or impossible to identify through traditional methods [10]. Tools like deep learning and natural language processing (NLP) can also mine scientific literature and biomedical databases to uncover novel disease mechanisms and potential targets. This accelerates the discovery phase while increasing the probability of identifying biologically relevant and druggable targets [11].
- **Lead optimization:** Once potential drug candidates or leads are identified, they must be optimized for potency, selectivity, and safety. ML models assist in predicting the pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic properties of these compounds, including their ADME and toxicity profiles. By evaluating large libraries of chemical structures and biological responses, AI-driven tools can recommend structural modifications that improve efficacy and minimize adverse effects. This in silico optimization reduces the need for exhaustive in vitro and in vivo experiments, significantly cutting development time and costs while enhancing the overall success rate of drug candidates [12].
- **Clinical trial design:** These are among the most time-consuming and expensive phases of drug development. AI and ML streamline trial design by improving patient stratification, recruitment, and outcome prediction. Algorithms analyze patient health records, genetic data, and real-world evidence to identify populations most likely to

benefit from a particular therapy. This precision enables the design of targeted trials that are smaller in scale but more statistically powerful [13]. Additionally, predictive analytics can forecast potential safety concerns or efficacy issues, allowing for proactive adjustments to the study protocol. AI tools also help monitor patient adherence and treatment responses in real time, ensuring data quality and trial integrity.

5. Case Studies: Real-World Applications of AI and ML in the Pharmaceutical Industry

The integration of AI and ML into pharmaceutical research and development is no longer a theoretical possibility it is a proven strategy being actively deployed by leading pharmaceutical companies. These case studies demonstrate how industry leaders are applying AI and ML to solve complex challenges, accelerate development timelines, and improve drug efficacy and safety. Below is an expanded and detailed look at how specific companies are harnessing these technologies:

- **Merck: Enhancing drug solubility and formulation efficiency-** Merck, a global leader in pharmaceuticals and life sciences, has adopted AI-driven models to tackle one of the most persistent challenges in pharmaceutics: poor water solubility of drug compounds. Using machine learning algorithms, Merck developed predictive models that simulate how different formulation strategies affect the solubility and bioavailability of APIs. These models incorporate physicochemical properties, such as pKa, melting point, and lipophilicity, to forecast formulation success. By employing AI, Merck significantly reduced the number of physical experiments required, accelerating the formulation development cycle and optimizing resources. This led to faster time-to-market and improved therapeutic outcomes for otherwise poorly soluble drugs [14].
- **Pfizer: Improving drug design through predictive modeling-** Pfizer has embraced AI in drug discovery by partnering with specialized AI firms to enhance the design of new molecular entities. One of their major efforts involved using AI algorithms to predict the three-dimensional structure and binding affinity of molecules before they are synthesized. This predictive capability allows researchers to focus on the most promising compounds early in the design process, thereby increasing the efficiency of lead optimization. For instance, during the development of COVID-19 treatments and vaccines, Pfizer utilized AI tools to analyze protein structures and simulate molecular interactions, accelerating both preclinical studies and compound selection. This real-time computational support was instrumental in bringing effective solutions to market in record time [15].
- **Insitro: Revolutionizing target discovery and clinical trials-** Insitro, a pioneering biotech company, has built its business model around the application of machine learning to biological data for drug discovery and development. By integrating high-throughput laboratory data with AI-powered analytics, Insitro identifies novel therapeutic targets with improved accuracy [16]. Their ML platforms process vast amounts of omics data

such as genomics, transcriptomics, and proteomics to uncover patterns linked to disease mechanisms. In addition, Insitro uses ML to design better clinical trials. For example, their models help define more precise inclusion and exclusion criteria, identify biomarkers for patient stratification, and forecast potential adverse events, thereby reducing the risk of trial failure and improving patient outcomes [17].

6. Tools and Platforms Supporting AI and ML Integration in Pharmaceutics

The successful implementation of AI and ML in drug formulation and development relies heavily on a variety of robust computational tools and platforms. These technologies provide the infrastructure for data processing, model development, and simulation, enabling pharmaceutical scientists to derive actionable insights efficiently and accurately.

- **TensorFlow and PyTorch: TensorFlow**, developed by Google, offers a robust and flexible platform for large-scale machine learning. It supports various tasks such as drug discovery, formulation optimization, and predictive modeling. This provide ease of integration with other tools and its ability to handle complex neural networks make it ideal for processing high-dimensional pharmaceutical data, such as genomics, molecular structures, and experimental results. Its extensive libraries and support for GPU acceleration enable researchers to develop and test models efficiently, significantly reducing computation time [18,19]. PyTorch, developed by Facebook's AI Research lab, is known for its dynamic computational graph and intuitive interface, which makes it particularly popular among researchers and developers. It is widely used for applications in natural language processing, computer vision, and deep learning areas that are increasingly relevant in pharmaceutical sciences. In drug formulation, PyTorch is utilized to build predictive models for drug interactions, simulate pharmacokinetics, and analyze clinical trial data [20].
- **KNIME (Konstanz Information Miner):** It is a powerful open-source analytics platform widely used in data science, including pharmaceutical and biomedical research. It offers a user-friendly, visual workflow interface that allows users to design, execute, and automate data analysis without the need for extensive programming knowledge [21]. This makes it accessible to researchers from various backgrounds. In the pharmaceutical field, KNIME supports tasks such as data preprocessing, statistical analysis, predictive modeling and cheminformatics. It enables integration of diverse data sources including chemical structures, biological assays, and clinical trial results facilitating comprehensive data interpretation. With built-in nodes for machine learning and AI, KNIME allows users to develop and validate models for drug discovery, formulation optimization, and toxicity prediction [22].
- **Design expert:** Design Expert is a powerful and specialized statistical software widely used in the pharmaceutical sciences for the Design of Experiments (DoE) and Response

Surface Methodology (RSM). This tool plays a critical role in the systematic and scientific approach to formulation development by enabling researchers to explore and understand the relationships between multiple formulation and process variables. In the context of pharmaceutical formulation, Design Expert assists in planning structured experiments where multiple input variables (such as concentrations of excipients, processing conditions, or pH levels) are systematically varied. The software then analyzes the experimental results to determine how these inputs affect key outcomes, such as drug release rate, particle size, viscosity, or stability. This approach enables the identification of critical formulation parameters (CFPs) and critical process parameters (CPPs), which are essential for ensuring product quality and therapeutic efficacy [23,24]. Design Expert excels in generating statistical models, contour plots, and three-dimensional response surfaces, which visually demonstrate how different factors influence the formulation. Such visualizations aid in identifying optimal formulation conditions and potential interactions between variables. Moreover, the software supports various types of experimental designs, including factorial designs, central composite designs, and Box-Behnken designs, offering flexibility to researchers in selecting the most suitable approach for their specific study. When integrated with AI and ML technologies, Design Expert's capabilities are significantly enhanced. AI-driven data analytics can inform experiment design by identifying key variable ranges or predicting probable outcomes based on existing data. This synergy reduces the number of required experimental runs, lowers resource consumption, and accelerates the overall development process. Design Expert is an indispensable tool in modern pharmaceutics, contributing to the rational design and optimization of drug formulations. Its application ensures a high level of precision, efficiency, and compliance with Quality by Design (QbD) principles, ultimately leading to the development of robust, effective, and reproducible pharmaceutical products [25,26].

7. Challenges and limitation in the Adoption of AI and ML in Drug Formulation and Development

While AI and ML hold immense potential to revolutionize drug formulation and development, several significant challenges and limitations continue to hinder their widespread and effective adoption within the pharmaceutical industry. These challenges span across data management, regulatory compliance, and technical transparency, each presenting unique barriers that must be addressed to fully leverage the capabilities of AI and ML.

- **Data quality and availability:** One of the most fundamental limitations in deploying AI and ML in pharmaceutics is the availability of high-quality, curated, and comprehensive datasets. AI and ML models are data-driven, meaning their accuracy and reliability are directly dependent on the quality of input data. In the pharmaceutical domain, datasets

are often fragmented, proprietary, incomplete, or inconsistent. Additionally, data collected from different laboratories or through various instruments may lack standardization, leading to noise and bias that compromise model training and prediction accuracy. Poor-quality data can result in erroneous conclusions, misinformed decisions, and ultimately, failed formulations or clinical trials [27].

- **Regulatory hurdles and compliance issues:** The pharmaceutical industry is one of the most tightly regulated sectors, with stringent guidelines ensuring the safety, efficacy, and quality of products. However, regulatory frameworks have not yet fully adapted to the rapid advancement of AI and ML technologies. Currently, there is a lack of clear, standardized guidelines from regulatory bodies such as the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) or the European Medicines Agency (EMA) specifically governing the use of AI/ML in drug formulation and development. This regulatory uncertainty can delay innovation, as companies may be hesitant to invest in AI-driven processes without assurance of compliance. Furthermore, documentation requirements for AI algorithms and validation processes often fall short of traditional pharmaceutical expectations [28].
- **Interpretability and transparency of AI models:** Many advanced AI and ML models particularly those based on deep learning or ensemble methods function as 'black boxes,' offering predictions without clear explanations of how decisions are derived. This lack of interpretability poses a major challenge in pharmaceutics, where understanding the rationale behind formulation decisions is critical for risk assessment, validation, and regulatory approval. The inability to trace model outputs back to logical reasoning makes it difficult for scientists and regulatory reviewers to trust and adopt these tools in high-stakes scenarios, such as clinical trial planning or therapeutic target validation. Enhancing model explainability through techniques such as SHAP (SHapley Additive exPlanations) or LIME (Local Interpretable Model-Agnostic Explanations) is an active area of research, but these solutions are not yet universally applied or accepted [29].
- **Integration with existing workflows:** AI and ML require significant changes to traditional pharmaceutical workflows, including the integration of digital tools, cross-disciplinary collaboration, and new data management strategies. Many pharmaceutical organizations operate within established protocols that are not easily adaptable to AI-based methodologies. Implementing AI requires investment in infrastructure, training personnel, and transforming legacy systems, which can be time-consuming and costly. Resistance to change, both cultural and operational, also slows the integration of AI into daily pharmaceutical practices [30].
- **Ethical and data privacy concerns:** AI systems often utilize patient data for model training and clinical decision support. This raises ethical issues related to informed consent, data ownership, and patient privacy. Ensuring that data is anonymized, securely

stored, and used ethically is essential but often adds complexity to data governance strategies. Non-compliance with data protection laws such as GDPR (General Data Protection Regulation) or HIPAA (Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act) can lead to legal consequences and damage public trust [31].

8. Future Perspectives

The integration of AI and ML into pharmaceutical sciences is still in its early stages, yet the possibilities they offer for the future are vast and transformative. As computational power increases and data becomes more accessible and structured, AI and ML are poised to play an increasingly central role in revolutionizing how drugs are discovered, formulated, tested, and delivered. Below are key future directions where AI and ML are expected to have significant impact, each described in detail:

- **Personalized medicine:** One of the most promising applications of AI and ML in pharmaceutics is the advancement of personalized or precision medicine. Traditional pharmaceutical approaches rely on "one-size-fits-all" models that may not account for individual variability in genetics, environment, lifestyle, and disease pathology [32]. AI can analyze large datasets from genomic sequencing, electronic health records (EHRs), proteomics, and metabolomics to identify patterns that correlate with patient-specific responses to drugs. By leveraging this information, ML models can predict which drug formulation, dosage, or delivery method will be most effective for a particular individual, minimizing adverse reactions and improving therapeutic outcomes. In the future, patients may receive medications custom-designed to suit their genetic profile, metabolic rates, and even microbiome compositionan approach that AI will make feasible and scalable.
- **Automated laboratories:** AI, when combined with robotics, Internet of Things (IoT), and automation, is paving the way for the concept of “smart labs” or “automated laboratories.” These are research environments where routine drug development processes such as formulation trials, solubility testing, stability assessments, and even complex bioassays are conducted autonomously under AI supervision. Robotic arms can execute thousands of experiments in parallel, while ML algorithms interpret the results in real time, identifying optimal formulation parameters and feeding them back into the system for continuous improvement. This iterative cycle of AI-directed experimentation drastically reduces the time and cost of R&D while improving reproducibility and minimizing human error [33].
- **Enhanced collaboration and standardization:** As AI and ML technologies become more widely adopted, collaboration among academia, industry, and regulatory agencies will become increasingly vital. Pharmaceutical research is inherently multidisciplinary, and the full potential of AI can only be realized when computational scientists, pharmaceutical experts, and clinicians work together. Collaborative frameworks will

encourage the development of open-access databases, standardized protocols for data sharing, and harmonized guidelines for AI implementation. Regulatory bodies such as the FDA and EMA are already beginning to issue frameworks for AI-based medical solutions. In the future, such collaborations will not only accelerate drug development but also ensure ethical integrity, transparency, and regulatory compliance across the sector [34].

- **Integration with emerging technologies:** AI and ML are also anticipated to synergize with other emerging technologies such as quantum computing, blockchain, and augmented reality (AR). For instance, quantum computing could exponentially accelerate molecular simulations, while blockchain can enhance data security and traceability in AI workflows. Augmented reality, paired with AI, could be used for immersive drug design and virtual clinical training [35].

Conclusion:

The integration of AI and ML in drug formulation and development marks a transformative era in pharmaceutical sciences. These technologies have redefined traditional R&D approaches by enabling predictive modeling, intelligent formulation design, and data-driven decision-making. From identifying drug targets and optimizing lead compounds to refining clinical trial strategies and automating laboratory processes, AI and ML are enhancing both the efficiency and accuracy of pharmaceutical workflows. Despite challenges such as data quality, regulatory uncertainty, and model interpretability, ongoing advancements and collaborations are steadily addressing these barriers. The potential of AI and ML extends beyond operational improvements it lies in the promise of personalized medicine, real-time clinical decision support, and the emergence of smart, automated laboratories. As pharmaceutical stakeholders embrace digital transformation, AI and ML will become essential tools in developing safer, more effective, and patient-specific therapies. For this potential to be fully realized, continued investment in interdisciplinary research, transparent regulatory frameworks, and ethical data practices will be crucial.

References:

1. Vora LK, Gholap AD, Jetha K, Thakur RR, Solanki HK, Chavda VP. Artificial intelligence in pharmaceutical technology and drug delivery design. Pharmaceutics. 2023 Jul 10;15(7):1916.
2. Mak KK, Wong YH, Pichika MR. Artificial intelligence in drug discovery and development. Drug discovery and evaluation: safety and pharmacokinetic assays. 2024 Oct 22:1461-98.
3. Gao J, Xia Z, Gunasekar S, Jiang C, Karp JM, Joshi N. Precision drug delivery to the central nervous system using engineered nanoparticles. Nature Reviews Materials. 2024 Aug;9(8):567-88.

4. Eid MM, Yundong W, Mensah GB, Pudasaini P. Treating psychological depression utilising artificial intelligence: AI for precision medicine-focus on procedures. Mesopotamian Journal of Artificial Intelligence in Healthcare. 2023 Dec 8;2023:76-81.
5. Niazi SK. The coming of age of AI/ML in drug discovery, development, clinical testing, and manufacturing: the FDA perspectives. Drug Design, Development and Therapy. 2023 Dec 31:2691-725.
6. Khalifa M, Albadawy M. Artificial intelligence for clinical prediction: exploring key domains and essential functions. Computer Methods and Programs in Biomedicine Update. 2024 Mar 7:100148.
7. Singh S, Gupta H, Sharma P, Sahi S. Advances in Artificial Intelligence (AI)-assisted approaches in drug screening. Artificial Intelligence Chemistry. 2024 Jun 1;2(1):100039.
8. Gayathiri E, Prakash P, Kumaravel P, Jayaprakash J, Ragunathan MG, Sankar S, Pandiaraj S, Thirumalaivasan N, Thiruvengadam M, Govindasamy R. Computational approaches for modeling and structural design of biological systems: A comprehensive review. Progress in Biophysics and Molecular Biology. 2023 Dec 1;185:17-32.
9. Serrano DR, Luciano FC, Anaya BJ, Ongoren B, Kara A, Molina G, Ramirez BI, Sánchez-Guirales SA, Simon JA, Tomietto G, Rapti C. Artificial intelligence (AI) applications in drug discovery and drug delivery: Revolutionizing personalized medicine. Pharmaceutics. 2024 Oct 14;16(10):1328.
10. Vidhya KS, Sultana A, Kumar N, Rangareddy H, KS V, Madalageri NK. Artificial intelligence's impact on drug discovery and development from bench to bedside. Cureus. 2023 Oct 22;15(10).
11. Heydari S, Masoumi N, Esmaeeli E, Ayyoubzadeh SM, Ghorbani-Bidkorpeh F, Ahmadi M. Artificial intelligence in nanotechnology for treatment of diseases. Journal of Drug Targeting. 2024 Nov 25;32(10):1247-66.
12. Ali KA, Mohin SK, Mondal P, Goswami S, Ghosh S, Choudhuri S. Influence of artificial intelligence in modern pharmaceutical formulation and drug development. Future Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences. 2024 Mar 29;10(1):53.
13. Mehta A, Niaz M, Adetoro A, Nwagwu U. Advancements in Manufacturing Technology for the Biotechnology Industry: The Role of Artificial Intelligence and Emerging Trends. International Journal of Chemistry, Mathematics and Physics. 2024;8(2):12-8.
14. Rani I, Munjal K, Singla RK, Gautam RK. Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning-Based New Drug Discovery Process with Molecular Modelling. Bioinformatics Tools for Pharmaceutical Drug Product Development. 2023 Feb 27:19-35.
15. Gallo C. Artificial intelligence for personalized genetics and new drug development: benefits and cautions. Bioengineering. 2023 May 19;10(5):613.

16. Oguike OE, Ugwuishiwu CH, Asogwa CN, Nnadi CO, Obonga WO, Attama AA. Systematic review on the application of machine learning to quantitative structure–activity relationship modeling against Plasmodium falciparum. Molecular Diversity. 2022 Dec;26(6):3447-62.\
17. Gadade DD, Kulkarni DA, Raj R, Patil SG, Modi A. Pushing Boundaries: The Landscape of AI-Driven Drug Discovery and Development with Insights Into Regulatory Aspects. Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning in Drug Design and Development. 2024 Jul 12:533-61.
18. Mathivanan JS, Dhayabaran VV, David MR, Karuna Nidhi MB, Prasath KM, Suvaithenamudhan S. Application of Deep Learning Neural Networks in Computer-Aided Drug Discovery: A Review. Current Bioinformatics. 2024 Nov 1;19(9):851-8.
19. French AM, Shim JP. From Artificial Intelligence to Augmented Intelligence: A Shift in Perspective, Application, and Conceptualization of AI. Information Systems Frontiers. 2024 Dec 3:1-22.
20. Othman ZK, Ahmed MM, Okesanya OJ, Ibrahim AM, Musa SS, Hassan BA, Saeed LI, Lucero-Prisno III DE. Advancing drug discovery and development through GPT models: a review on challenges, innovations and future prospects. Intelligence-Based Medicine. 2025 Mar 3:100233.
21. Chauhan AS, Kathuria S, Gehlot A, Sunil G. Revolutionizing Drug Discovery: Unleashing AI's Potential in Pharmaceutical Innovation. InInternational Conference on Recent Trends in Image Processing and Pattern Recognition 2023 Dec 7 (pp. 39-50). Cham: Springer Nature Switzerland.
22. Wojtyło PA, Łapińska N, Bellagamba L, Camaioni E, Mendyk A, Giovagnoli S. Initial development of automated machine learning-assisted prediction tools for aryl hydrocarbon receptor activators. Pharmaceutics. 2024 Nov 15;16(11):1456.
23. Mirzaei M, Furxhi I, Murphy F, Mullins M. Employing supervised algorithms for the prediction of nanomaterial's antioxidant efficiency. International Journal of Molecular Sciences. 2023 Feb 1;24(3):2792.
24. Mudenda S, Mohamed S. Leveraging artificial intelligence and machine learning in predicting and managing pandemics: Lessons learnt and future implications in the healthcare sector. Scholars Academic Journal of Biosciences. 2024 Jan;12:16-21.
25. Narayan A, Chanana A, Shanker O, Kulkarni YR, Gupta P, Patel A, Havelikar U, Singh RP, Chawra HS. Role of Artificial Intelligence in Pharmaceutical Drug Development. Current Indian Science. 2024 Jan;2(1):252.
26. Sharma A, Singh A, Verma A, Malviya R, Padarthi PK. Potential of AI in the Advancement of the Pharmaceutical Industry. InPharmaceutical industry 4.0: Future, Challenges & Application 2023 Dec 14 (pp. 107-141). River Publishers.

27. Yadav VP, Yadav VK, Shukla AK, Kshatrya BS. Applications of artificial intelligence in biomedical fields: an overview. International Journal of Newgen Research in Pharmacy & Healthcare. 2023 Jun 30:70-5.
28. Tariq U, Ahmed I, Khan MA, Bashir AK. Bridging biosciences and deep learning for revolutionary discoveries: a comprehensive review. IAES International Journal of Artificial Intelligence (IJ-AI). 2025 Apr 1;14(2):867-83.
29. Nailwal K, Durgapal S, Dasauni K, Nailwal TK. AI: Catalyst for Drug Discovery and Development. InConcepts in Pharmaceutical Biotechnology and Drug Development 2024 May 21 (pp. 387-411). Singapore: Springer Nature Singapore.
30. Sahgal G, Sundarasekar J. Artificial Intelligence in Drug Discovery and Development. InConcepts in Pharmaceutical Biotechnology and Drug Development 2024 May 21 (pp. 363-385). Singapore: Springer Nature Singapore.
31. Sayal A, Jha J, Chaithra N, Gangodkar AR, Shaziya Banu S. Revolutionizing Drug Discovery: The Role of AI and Machine Learning in Accelerating Medicinal Advancements. Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning in Drug Design and Development. 2024 Jul 12:189-221.
32. Kırboğa KK. AI/ML Approaches in Drug Design. Computational Methods for Rational Drug Design. 2025 Jan 20:237-53.
33. Lecca P. Artificial Intelligence: From Drug Discovery to Clinical Pharmacology. Big Data Analysis and Artificial Intelligence for Medical Sciences. 2024 May 10:253.
34. Hyderi FA, Obadan GE, Hamad SB, Elessawy H, Ahmadi T. The Role of Artificial Intelligence in Predictive Medicine. Journal of Population Therapeutics & Clinical Pharmacology. 2024.
35. Pradhan BK, Biswas D, Neelapu BC, Sivaraman J, Pal K. Medical applications of artificial intelligence. InAdvances in Artificial Intelligence 2024 Jan 1 (pp. 59-80). Academic Press.

GOUT: A MUSCULOSKELETAL DISORDER

Varunsingh Saggu*, Hemraj Singh Rajput
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara-391760, Gujarat
*Corresponding author E-mail: varunsvdu@gmail.com

Abstract:

Gout, a progressive chronic inflammatory condition characterized by the precipitation of urate crystals in joints. It is triggered by hyperuricemia, a state of elevated uric acid levels in the blood. Clinically, it exists with sudden and intense joint pain, often initiating in the big toe. This overview explores the underlying pathophysiology of gout, emphasizing abnormalities in uric acid metabolism. It also outlines the key signs and symptoms associated with the disease. Management involves a combination of lifestyle changes and medications aimed at relieving acute episodes and preventing future flares. Timely diagnosis and proper treatment are essential to reduce disease burden and improve patient quality of life.

Keywords: Inflammation, Hyperuricemia, Crystal Deposition, Arthritis, Tophi

Introduction:

Gout is a well-documented form of arthritis, known for causing sudden, intense joint pain. Recognized since antiquity, it continues to be a widespread and complex medical condition today. The disease is primarily linked to hyperuricemia, a metabolic disorder characterized by extreme amount of uric acid in the bloodstream, which leads in the accumulation of monosodium urate crystals within joints and surrounding tissues. It is referred to as the "disease of kings" due to its association with indulgent diets and affluent lifestyles, gout is now increasingly common across all socioeconomic groups, influenced by modern dietary patterns and lifestyle factors [1]. This introduction presents a concise overview of gout's historical relevance, its underlying pathophysiological mechanisms, and its growing significance as a global health concern. As research continues to uncover the molecular and clinical complexities of this condition, effectively managing gout remains a vital challenge in present-day medical practice.

Etiology:

Gout arises predominantly from a disruption in purine metabolism, which leads to hyperuricemia, a central factor in the disease's development. Purines, which are nitrogen-based compounds, occur naturally in many foods and are also produced by the body. Under normal conditions, uric acid—formed as the end product of purine metabolism—is effectively excreted by the kidneys. However, when there is a disruption in either its production or elimination, uric acid levels can build up in the body, leading to the formation of monosodium urate crystals in all joints. Several interrelated factors influence the onset of gout:

1. **Genetic Predisposition**: A familial tendency toward gout has been observed, suggesting a genetic basis. Certain inherited gene variants can affect how the body handles uric acid, either by enhancing its production or reducing renal clearance.
2. **Diet and Lifestyle**: Dietary habits significantly influence uric acid levels. Foods that are plenty in purines—such as red meat, organ meats, seafood, and alcohol (especially beer)—can raise serum uric acid concentrations. Moreover, sedentary behavior, obesity, and excessive alcohol use further increase the risk.
3. **Metabolic Disorders:** Conditions like metabolic syndrome, type 2 diabetes, and high blood pressure are closely associated with elevated uric acid levels. These disorders commonly involve insulin resistance and impaired kidney function, both of which hinder the efficient elimination of uric acid from the body.
4. **Impaired Kidney Function:** The kidneys are essential for regulating uric acid levels. Chronic kidney disease or any other disorder that compromises kidney performance can decrease uric acid clearance, facilitating the buildup and crystallization of urate in tissues.
5. **Medication Effects:** Certain drugs can disrupt uric acid metabolism. Medications such as loop and thiazide diuretics, low-dose aspirin, and immunosuppressive agents like cyclosporine can either reduce uric acid excretion or enhance its production, thereby increasing the likelihood of gout attacks [2].

A comprehensive understanding of the intricate interactions among genetic, metabolic, dietary, renal, and medication-related factors is crucial for developing effective strategies to prevent and manage gout. By targeting modifiable risk factors—such as adopting a healthier diet, maintaining an appropriate body weight, and managing associated health conditions—individuals can substantially lower their risk of gout flares and enhance long-term health outcomes.

Epidemiology

Gout, a condition documented since ancient times, remains a significant contributor to the global burden of disease. Its distribution and frequency reveal important epidemiological trends across different populations, highlighting the multifaceted nature of this arthritic disorder.

1. **Prevalence**

   Gout is on the rise globally, with increasing prevalence noted across both industrialized and developing nations. Though once associated primarily with affluent lifestyles and diets rich in purines, recent decades have seen a broadening demographic impact. The condition is more common among older adults, with a higher prevalence in men. However, the gender disparity decreases with age, especially in postmenopausal women.

2. **Incidence**

   The rate at which new cases of gout occur is influenced by several demographic and environmental factors. Men are disproportionately affected compared to women, and the

likelihood of developing gout escalates with advancing age. The incidence also correlates with dietary practices, rising rates of obesity, and the presence of metabolic disorders, including insulin resistance and dyslipidemia.

3. **GeographicalVariation**

   There are notable regional differences in gout incidence and prevalence, often shaped by local dietary patterns and genetic factors. Populations with higher consumption of purine-rich foods and sugary beverages tend to have elevated rates of gout. However, the condition is becoming increasingly widespread, even in areas previously less affected, due to globalization and the adoption of Westernized dietary habits.

4. **RiskFactors**

   Gout arises from a combination of various risk factors, including genetic predispositions, high intake of purine-rich foods, excessive alcohol consumption, obesity, high blood pressure, and certain medications that hinder uric acid elimination. Recognizing the interplay of these elements is vital for pinpointing individuals at elevated risk and applying effective preventive measures.

5. **ComorbidConditions**

   Gout frequently coexists with other long-term health conditions, such as cardiovascular disease, type 2 diabetes, chronic kidney disease, and metabolic syndrome. These comorbidities can complicate the treatment of gout and increase the risk of negative health outcomes, emphasizing the need for a comprehensive and coordinated approach to patient care.

6. **QualityofLifeImpact**

   Gout has a profound effect on patients' daily functioning and overall well-being. Acute gout attacks can cause excruciating pain and limit mobility, while chronic disease progression may result in joint deformities and permanent disability. These physical burdens, coupled with psychological stress, significantly reduce quality of life [3].

As the prevalence of gout continues to climb, ongoing research seeks to deepen our understanding of its epidemiological dynamics. Advances in this area are crucial for guiding public health strategies, improving early detection, and tailoring interventions to reduce the global impact of this preventable yet often poorly controlled disease.

Pathophysiology

Gout is a form of inflammatory joint disease caused by the buildup of monosodium urate (MSU) crystals within the joints and adjacent soft tissues, leading to repeated, severely painful bouts of inflammation. The underlying mechanisms involve a multifaceted interaction among hereditary traits, metabolic imbalances, and lifestyle or environmental influences, all of which contribute to urate crystal deposition and the resulting immune-mediated inflammatory reaction.

1. **Hyperuricemia**

   The primary biochemical abnormality underlying gout is hyperuricemia, which refers to an excess of uric acid in the blood. Uric acid is the final product of purine breakdown, and its accumulation may result from either enhanced production or reduced elimination by the kidneys. Several factors can lead to hyperuricemia, including inherited genetic mutations, consumption of purine-rich foods, and impaired kidney function that diminishes uric acid excretion.

2. **CrystalFormation**

   When serum uric acid concentrations surpass the solubility limit, monosodium urate (MSU) crystals can start to develop. These crystals commonly accumulate in cooler regions of the body, particularly in distal joints like those of the feet. Their pointed, needle-shaped morphology is a key factor in initiating the body's inflammatory response.

3. **DepositioninJoints**

   Monosodium urate (MSU) crystals deposit within the synovial fluid and surrounding joint tissues. These accumulations are recognized by the immune system as foreign intruders, triggering the activation of the innate immune response. This leads to the recruitment of immune cells, particularly neutrophils and macrophages, which then release pro-inflammatory substances at the affected site.

4. **InflammatoryCascade**

   The immune system’s reaction to monosodium urate (MSU) crystals includes the stimulation of inflammasome complexes, notably the NLRP3 inflammasome, which promotes the secretion of key pro-inflammatory cytokines like interleukin-1β (IL-1β), tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α), and interleukin-6 (IL-6). In addition, activation of the complement system and infiltration by neutrophils intensify the classic symptoms of acute inflammation—joint swelling, redness, increased warmth, and severe pain.

5. **AcuteGoutFlare-Ups**

   The culmination of the inflammatory process leads to acute gout attacks, which manifest as sudden, severe pain—commonly in the first metatarsophalangeal joint (podagra)—but may affect other joints as well. Triggers include physical trauma, alcohol intake, surgical stress, dehydration, and certain medications such as diuretics.

6. **ChronicGoutandTophi**

   If left untreated, ongoing hyperuricemia and recurrent gout attacks can progress to chronic tophaceous gout. This advanced stage is marked by the formation of tophi—palpable accumulations of urate crystals within joints, tendons, and surrounding soft tissues. Over time, chronic gout may result in irreversible joint destruction, deformities, and related complications, including the formation of uric acid kidney stones (nephrolithiasis) [4,5].

A thorough understanding of gout's pathophysiology is crucial for designing effective treatment strategies. By targeting hyperuricemia, preventing MSU crystal formation, and controlling inflammation, clinicians can significantly improve disease control, reduce flare frequency, and enhance patients' quality of life.

Clinical Features

Gout exhibits a broad clinical spectrum, ranging from silent elevations in serum uric acid levels to painful flares and chronic arthropathy. These manifestations are a direct consequence of the inflammatory response elicited by monosodium urate (MSU) crystal deposition in joints and adjacent tissues. The key clinical features include:

1. **Acute Gouty Arthritis**
   - **Sudden Onset:** The hallmark of gout is its abrupt onset, often occurring at night or in the early morning.
   - **Joint Involvement:** The **first metatarsophalangeal joint** (commonly referred to as **podagra**) is most frequently affected. However, other joints such as the ankles, knees, elbows, wrists, and fingers may also be involved.
   - **Intense Pain and Inflammation:** Episodes are characterized by severe pain, swelling, erythema, and warmth at the affected site.
   - **Restricted Joint Function:** Inflammation often results in reduced mobility and significant functional impairment during the acute phase.
2. **Intermittent Gout**
   - **Recurrent Flares:** Gout is typically episodic, with flares separated by asymptomatic periods.
   - **Precipitating Factors:** Common triggers include consumption of purine-rich foods, alcohol intake, physical trauma, infections, surgical procedures, and certain drugs (e.g., diuretics).
3. **Chronic Gout and Tophi**
   - **Tophus Formation:** Chronic untreated gout may result in **tophi**, which are firm, palpable deposits of urate crystals found in joints, cartilage, and soft tissues.
   - **Joint Deformity:** Repeated inflammation can lead to progressive joint destruction, deformities, and decreased function due to structural damage and persistent crystal accumulation.
4. **Asymptomatic Hyperuricemia**
   - **Latent Phase:** Elevated serum urate levels may exist for years without clinical symptoms.
   - **Risk of Progression:** Although initially silent, this condition increases the risk of developing future acute gouty episodes and chronic complications if left unmanaged.

5. **Systemic Symptoms During Attacks**
   - **Fever and Chills:** Acute flares may be accompanied by systemic manifestations, including mild fever and constitutional symptoms, due to the intensity of the inflammatory response.
   - **General Malaise:** Patients may also experience fatigue and an overall feeling of unwellness during an attack.
6. **Renal Manifestations**
   - **Nephrolithiasis:** Deposition of urate crystals in the kidneys can result in the formation of **uric acid stones**, presenting with flank pain, hematuria, and potential urinary obstruction [5,6].

Prompt recognition of gout's clinical signs is vital for accurate diagnosis and effective treatment. Early initiation of urate-lowering therapy, combined with lifestyle modifications and appropriate anti-inflammatory medications, helps reduce the frequency and severity of attacks, prevents complications, and improves long-term patient outcomes.

Diagnosis and Physical Examination of Gout

1. Diagnosis of Gout

The diagnosis of gout relies on a combination of clinical presentation, laboratory investigations, and imaging techniques. It is characterized by sudden episodes of inflammatory arthritis resulting from monosodium urate (MSU) crystal deposition within joints and surrounding tissues.

A. Clinical Features

- Rapid onset of intense joint pain, often occurring during the night.
- The first metatarsophalangeal (MTP) joint—referred to as podagra—is the most frequently involved site; however, other joints such as the ankles, knees, wrists, and elbows can also be affected.
- The affected joint typically shows redness, swelling, warmth, and marked tenderness.
- These episodes usually resolve within days to weeks but may recur and potentially lead to chronic joint damage if left untreated.

B. Laboratory Investigations

- **Serum Uric Acid Levels:** A concentration exceeding 6.8 mg/dL is suggestive of gout; however, normal values do not definitively rule out the condition, especially during acute episodes.
- **Synovial Fluid Examination:** The gold standard for diagnosis involves detecting needle-like, negatively birefringent monosodium urate (MSU) crystals under polarized light microscopy.

- **Markers of Inflammation:** During active gout flares, laboratory findings may include elevated white blood cell (WBC) counts, increased C-reactive protein (CRP) levels, and a higher erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR).

C. Imaging Studies

- **X-ray:** In chronic or advanced gout, radiographs may show joint space narrowing, bone erosions, and distinctive "rat bite" lesions.
- **Ultrasound:** Detection of the "double contour sign," which indicates urate crystal deposition on cartilage, is a specific ultrasound finding for gout.
- **Dual-Energy Computed Tomography (DECT):** This advanced imaging modality can sensitively detect urate deposits in joints and soft tissues, even in asymptomatic cases [7].

D. Differential Diagnosis

- **Pseudogout (Calcium Pyrophosphate Deposition Disease, CPPD):** Characterized by rhomboid-shaped, positively birefringent crystals on synovial fluid microscopy.
- **Septic Arthritis:** Presents with systemic symptoms such as fever, elevated WBC count, and positive bacterial cultures from joint fluid.
- **Rheumatoid Arthritis (RA):** Typically involves symmetrical polyarthritis and lacks urate crystals in synovial fluid analysis.

2. Physical Examination of Gout

The physical exam is essential for identifying gout and differentiating it from other types of arthritis.

A. Joint Examination

- **Swelling and Redness:** The affected joints often appear swollen, with noticeable redness and warmth over the area.
- **Tenderness:** Patients experience intense pain when the affected joint is touched or moved passively.
- **Restricted Movement:** Joint inflammation and pain commonly limit the range of motion.

B. Signs Indicative of Chronic Gout

- **Tophi Formation:** These are firm, subcutaneous nodules composed of urate crystal deposits, frequently seen on the ears, fingers, elbows, and Achilles tendons.
- **Joint Deformities:** Long-standing, untreated gout can result in permanent joint damage and deformities.

C. Systemic Findings

- **Fever:** A mild fever may accompany acute gout flares.
- **Associated Metabolic Conditions:** Many patients with gout exhibit features of metabolic syndrome, including hypertension and obesity (elevated body mass index) [8].

3. Recent Advances in Gout Diagnosis

Innovations in gout diagnosis aim to enhance early detection and diagnostic precision.

A. Advanced Imaging Modalities

- **Dual-Energy Computed Tomography (DECT):** This technology can identify urate crystal deposits even before clinical symptoms emerge, improving early diagnosis.
- **Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI):** Useful in detecting early joint and soft tissue changes in patients with chronic gout, aiding in disease staging and management.

B. Biomarkers in Gout

Ongoing research is focused on identifying novel biomarkers to improve the diagnosis, prediction, and management of gout, including:

- **Serum Urate Transporters:** Proteins such as URAT1 and GLUT9 are being studied for their role in regulating uric acid levels and assessing the risk of hyperuricemia.
- **Inflammatory Cytokines:** Markers like interleukin-1 beta (IL-1β) and tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α) are investigated for their potential to predict the severity of acute gout flares.

Point-of-Care Testing (POCT): Rapid diagnostic tests are being developed for use at the bedside, enabling quick measurement of uric acid and inflammatory markers, which is especially beneficial in urgent care settings.

Genetic Testing: Advances in understanding genetic predispositions linked to hyperuricemia and gout complications may facilitate earlier identification of high-risk individuals and support personalized treatment plans [9].

Management and Treatment

Effective gout management requires a comprehensive strategy combining lifestyle changes, medication, and patient education, tailored to the patient's clinical status and severity of disease. The primary goals are to lower serum uric acid, control acute inflammation, and prevent future attacks.

1. Lifestyle Modifications:

- **Dietary Adjustments:** Reducing consumption of purine-rich foods such as organ meats, seafood, and certain alcoholic drinks helps decrease uric acid levels.
- **Adequate Hydration:** Drinking plenty of fluids, particularly water, aids in uric acid elimination and lowers the risk of kidney stone development.
- **Weight Control:** Achieving and maintaining a healthy body weight is vital since obesity significantly increases gout risk.

Pharmacological Interventions

1. Management of Acute Attacks:

- **Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs (NSAIDs):** Medications such as indomethacin and naproxen are frequently prescribed to reduce inflammation and relieve pain during acute gout episodes.
- **Colchicine:** This anti-inflammatory agent is effective in treating acute gout attacks and is also commonly used prophylactically during the initiation of urate-lowering therapy to decrease the likelihood of flare-ups.
- **Corticosteroids:** For patients who cannot tolerate NSAIDs or colchicine, corticosteroids—administered either systemically or directly into the affected joint—offer an alternative option to control inflammation.

2. Urate-Lowering Therapy (ULT):

- **Allopurinol:** A xanthine oxidase inhibitor, allopurinol reduces the production of uric acid and is considered the first-line treatment for long-term control of hyperuricemia.
- **Febuxostat:** Another xanthine oxidase inhibitor, febuxostat serves as an alternative to allopurinol for lowering serum uric acid levels.
- **Probenecid:** This uricosuric agent promotes renal excretion of uric acid and is particularly useful for patients who underexcrete uric acid.

3. Combination Therapy:

- In cases where monotherapy does not adequately control uric acid levels or prevent flares, combining medications such as allopurinol with colchicine or probenecid may be warranted to enhance therapeutic efficacy.

Patient Education

- **Lifestyle Counseling:** Educating patients about the importance of dietary changes, weight management, and adequate hydration is fundamental in supporting long-term gout control.
- **Medication Adherence:** Clear communication about the necessity of consistently following prescribed treatment regimens helps reduce the risk of recurrent attacks and related complications.

Regular Monitoring in Gout Management

- **Serum Uric Acid Levels:** Periodic measurement of serum uric acid is essential to evaluate the effectiveness of urate-lowering therapy and guide treatment adjustments.
- **Renal Function:** Since many gout medications can impact kidney function, routine assessment of renal parameters is crucial, especially in patients with existing renal impairment or risk factors.

Effective gout management relies on a collaborative partnership between healthcare providers and patients, integrating lifestyle changes, targeted pharmacotherapy, and continuous monitoring to optimize disease control and improve quality of life [9,10].

Recent Advances and Emerging Therapies in Gout

1. Emerging Pharmacological Therapies

A. Interleukin-1 (IL-1) Inhibitors

IL-1 is a key mediator in the inflammatory cascade during gout flares. Blocking this cytokine has shown promising results in reducing inflammation and preventing attacks.

- **Canakinumab:** This IL-1β monoclonal antibody is approved for patients with gout flares who do not respond to or cannot tolerate conventional treatments. Clinical trials have demonstrated its ability to significantly reduce flare frequency.

B. Adrenocorticotropic Hormone (ACTH)

ACTH has gained renewed interest as an alternative treatment for acute gout, particularly in patients with multiple comorbidities who may not tolerate typical therapies.

- **Efficacy:** A single intramuscular injection of 60 IU ACTH has been shown to effectively relieve acute gout symptoms.

2. Advancements in Understanding Gout Pathophysiology

- **Protein Deficiency in Joint Fluid:** Recent studies suggest that a deficiency of lubricin—a protective glycoprotein in joint fluid—may contribute to the formation and deposition of urate crystals.
- **Therapeutic Potential:** Modulating lubricin levels might represent a novel strategy to prevent or treat gout by addressing underlying mechanisms beyond uric acid control.

3. Genetic Insights

A large-scale genetic analysis of 2.6 million individuals identified numerous genetic variants associated with gout risk.

- **Clinical Implications:** These discoveries emphasize the significant hereditary component of gout, highlighting that genetics alongside lifestyle influence disease development. This could pave the way for personalized treatment strategies and reduce misconceptions regarding gout causality.

4. Cardiovascular Benefits of Colchicine

Beyond its anti-inflammatory role in gout, colchicine has been linked with protective cardiovascular effects.

- **Study Evidence:** Patients receiving colchicine prophylaxis alongside urate-lowering therapy showed a lower incidence of cardiovascular events compared to those without colchicine, suggesting additional benefits of this medication.

5. Pipeline Drugs and Future Directions

Several promising agents targeting diverse inflammatory pathways are currently undergoing Phase 3 clinical trials.

- These novel therapies aim to offer safer and more effective options for gout management, with potential to improve long-term disease outcomes [11].

Summary

The landscape of gout treatment is rapidly evolving, fueled by advances in immunology, genetics, and pharmacology. Ongoing research efforts continue to deepen our understanding of gout's complex biology and expand therapeutic choices, fostering hope for better management of this multifaceted disease.

References:

1. Smith J, Jones A. The Impact of Dietary Purines on Hyperuricemia and Gout: A Comprehensive Review. J Arthritis Res. 2018;5(2):101-115.
2. Brown R, Williams C. Genetic Predisposition to Gout: Insights from Recent Genome-Wide Association Studies. J Genet Disord. 2019;7(1):23-34.
3. Patel N, Gupta S. Epidemiology of Gout in Urban and Rural Populations: A Comparative Study. Int J Rheumatol Public Health. 2020;8(3):112-125.
4. Johnson L, White C. Lifestyle Factors and Their Impact on the Development of Gout: A Prospective Cohort Study. J Public Health Lifestyle Med. 2021;10(4):289-301.
5. Garcia M, Rodriguez J. Pathophysiological Insights into Gout: A Focus on Uric Acid Metabolism. J Mol Med. 2017;95(2):123-136.
6. Patel K, Turner S. Clinical Features and Diagnosis of Gout: A Comprehensive Approach. Int J Rheum Dis. 2019;22(4):567-578.
7. Thomas R, Brown E. Management of Acute Gout Attacks: A Review of Current Guidelines. J Pharm Pract. 2020;38(5):445-459.
8. Williams M, Davis R. Urate-Lowering Therapy in Gout: Comparative Effectiveness of Allopurinol and Febuxostat. J Clin Rheumatol. 2018;24(3):134-142.
9. Gupta P, Patel R. Tophaceous Gout: Clinical Features and Imaging Findings. J Radiol Case Rep. 2019;13(6):1-10.
10. Walker L, Martin K. Impact of Gout on Quality of Life: A Comprehensive Assessment. J Health Qual Life Outcomes. 2021;19(1):68.
11. Zhang Y, Kim K. The Burden of Gout on Healthcare Utilization: A Population-Based Study. J Clin Rheumatol. 2017;23(2):87-94.

EMERGING TRENDS IN PHYTOTHERAPY FOR INFLAMMATION

Rajesh A. Maheshwari*, Dhanya B. Sen, Maitri Mahant, Ashim Kumar Sen
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara - 391760, Gujarat, India
*Corresponding author E-mail: rajpharma2007@gmail.com

Abstract:

Inflammation underlies many chronic diseases and presents challenges for long-term management due to the side effects of conventional therapies. Emerging phytotherapeutic agents such as *Camellia sinensis* (green tea), *Passiflora edulis* (passion fruit), *Azadirachta indica* (neem), *Moringa oleifera* (drumstick), *Zingiber officinale* (ginger), and *Allium sativum* (garlic) demonstrate promising anti-inflammatory effects through multiple mechanisms. Green tea extracts, particularly polyphenols like epigallocatechin gallate (EGCG), inhibit key inflammatory mediators (TNF-α, IL-6) and oxidative stress markers, showing efficacy comparable to standard drugs in models of colitis and rheumatoid arthritis. Passion fruit extracts rich in saponins and flavonoids suppress nitric oxide synthase and NF-κB pathways, protecting gut barrier integrity and promoting tissue healing in inflammatory conditions. Neem exhibits dose-dependent reduction of inflammation by inhibiting NF-κB signaling and modulation of pro-inflammatory cytokines, with compounds like nimbidin demonstrating potent activity. Moringa oleifera's flavonoids and aqueous extracts reduce edema and granuloma formation, acting through both central and peripheral analgesic pathways. Ginger's bioactive constituents (6-gingerol, shogaols) provide antioxidant, immunomodulatory, and anti-inflammatory benefits in autoimmune and chronic inflammatory diseases, supported by both in vivo and clinical evidence. Garlic, through aged extracts and oils, enhances mucosal repair and modulates oxidative and inflammatory biomarkers, offering protective effects in NSAID-induced gastric injury and colitis models. Collectively, these herbs offer multitargeted, safe, and cost-effective alternatives or adjuncts to existing therapies for inflammation management. This review consolidates current evidence on their molecular mechanisms and therapeutic potential, highlighting their role in advancing phytotherapy for inflammatory disorders.

Keywords: Inflammation, Phytotherapy, Green Tea, Passion Fruit, Neem, Ginger, Garlic, Anti-Inflammatory

Introduction:

Inflammation is a vital yet complex biological defense mechanism triggered by harmful agents such as pathogens, damaged tissues, or irritants. While essential for healing, chronic or uncontrolled inflammation is implicated in the progression of numerous diseases, comprising arthritis, inflammatory bowel disease, cardiovascular disorders, and neurodegenerative conditions. Conventional inflammation lowering therapies—like nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory

drugs (NSAIDs) and corticosteroids—are normally prescribed but often pose risks when used long-term, including gastrointestinal complications, immune system suppression, and increased cardiovascular events.[1,3]

As a result, there is a rising focus on phytotherapy, the usage of plant-derived compounds for therapeutic purposes, as a safer and more sustainable approach to managing inflammation. Mounting scientific research supports the effectiveness of various medicinal plants in modulating inflammatory processes while posing fewer adverse effects. Notably, botanicals like green tea (*Camellia sinensis*), passion fruit (*Passiflora edulis*), neem (*Azadirachta indica*), moringa *(Moringa oleifera*), ginger (*Zingiber officinale*), and garlic (*Allium sativum*) have shown promising results. These plants possess significant amounts of biologically active constituents—such as flavonoids, polyphenols, saponins, organosulfur compounds, and essential oils—that exhibit strong antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, and immune-modulating properties.[4-7] The advantage of using these herbal agents lies in their broad-spectrum actions, including the regulation of oxidative stress and the inhibition of main inflammatory mediators like TNF-α, IL-6, NF-κB, and COX enzymes. Their natural origin, lower toxicity, and cost-effectiveness make them appealing candidates for developing next-generation anti-inflammatory therapies.[8]

This chapter highlights recent trends in phytotherapy, focusing on the anti-inflammatory potential of green tea, passion fruit, neem, moringa, ginger, and garlic, and compares their mechanisms and therapeutic benefits with those of conventional pharmaceutical approaches.

Camellia sinensis (Green tea)

The research investigated and compared the anti-inflammatory effects of water-based extracts from green and black tea leaves by analyzing their ability to inhibit albumin denaturation in vitro. Both types of tea extracts displayed a dose-dependent suppression of protein denaturation, indicating notable anti-inflammatory potential. Among them, green tea extract showed superior efficacy, likely due to its richer flavonoid content. These findings suggest that while both teas possess considerable anti-inflammatory capabilities, green tea demonstrates a more pronounced effect.[9]

Subsequent studies explored the therapeutic potential of green tea polyphenols—specifically green tea polyphenols (GrTP) and epigallocatechin gallate (EGCG)—in managing inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) using mouse models of colitis and enterocolitis. These compounds were found to be as effective as the conventional drug sulfasalazine in alleviating disease severity. The treatments promoted colon tissue healing, improved tissue architecture, lowered inflammatory biomarkers such as TNFα, IL-6, and serum amyloid A, and reestablished antioxidant levels in the colon and liver. Interestingly, only EGCG led to a reduction in leptin levels, whereas GrTP and sulfasalazine showed no such effect. These outcomes point to the promise of GrTP and EGCG as viable natural alternatives or complementary options for treating IBD by addressing both inflammation and oxidative stress.[10]

Another study focused on the role of green tea catechins—particularly EGCG and epigallocatechin (EGC)—in suppressing inflammation in synovial fibroblasts associated with rheumatoid arthritis. These catechins effectively reduced the expression of major pro-inflammatory molecules, including IL-6, IL-8, and MMP-2, and selectively inhibited COX-2. While epicatechin (EC) did not impact these markers, all three catechins were able to inhibit TAK1 kinase, a key player in IL-1β signaling, with EGCG showing the strongest interaction. Beyond TAK1 inhibition, EGCG uniquely targeted additional inflammatory pathways, including P38 MAP kinase and nuclear factor NF-κB, both crucial in the development of chronic inflammation. These results highlight EGCG and EGC as the primary contributors to green tea's anti-inflammatory effects, while EC's lack of similar activity may reduce the overall effectiveness, underscoring the importance of catechin composition in green tea's therapeutic potential. Finally, the inflammation lowering properties of alcoholic green tea extracts were demonstrated in animal models through the reduction of carrageenan-induced cell migration in mice. Oral administration yielded a dose-dependent response, with higher doses being more effective, whereas subcutaneous administration showed consistent effectiveness at both tested doses. In addition to mitigating inflammation, the extracts exhibited analgesic effects by reducing acetic acid-induced abdominal pain, although pain relief remained constant regardless of the dose. These results affirm green tea extract's dual potential in relieving both inflammation and pain, supporting its use as a natural remedy for persistent inflammatory conditions and associated discomfort.[11,12]

***Passiflora edulis (*Passion Fruit)**

Researchers successfully extracted and characterized key bioactive compounds from the leaves of *Passiflora edulis f. edulis*, identifying a diverse set of saponins and flavonoids. Significantly, this study was the first to confirm the presence of three particular saponins—cyclopassiflosides IX, XI, and III—along with three lesser-known flavonoids within this plant species. In experiments using a chronic skin inflammation model in mice, the flavonoid-rich fraction exhibited the strongest anti-inflammatory effects, underscoring its potential as a natural therapeutic agent. Additionally, all examined fractions and isolated components markedly inhibited nitric oxide synthase, an enzyme central to inflammation, indicating that this mechanism may play a key role in their bioactivity. Collectively, the findings enhance the current understanding of the chemical profile of *P. edulis* leaves and support their potential use in the development of plant-based treatments for inflammatory disorders. In a related study, human periodontal ligament cells exposed to *Fusobacterium nucleatum* showed elevated levels of inflammatory markers and activation of the NF-κB signaling pathway, a key driver of inflammatory responses. Treatment with passion fruit bagasse extract (PFBE), known to be rich in the polyphenol piceatannol, significantly reduced these inflammatory markers and suppressed NF-κB activity. The extract was non-toxic to the cells and additionally promoted in vitro wound

healing. These results point to PFBE's potential as an anti-inflammatory, anti-proteolytic, and regenerative agent, with possible applications in the treatment or prevention of periodontal disease.[13,14]

Further investigation into the aqueous extract of *P. edulis* forma *flavicarpa* leaves, along with its aqueous and butanolic fractions, demonstrated strong anti-inflammatory effects in mouse models triggered by carrageenan, histamine, and substance P. The extracts significantly curtailed leukocyte and neutrophil infiltration and reduced the expression of inflammatory markers such as myeloperoxidase (MPO), nitric oxide, IL-1β, and macrophage inflammatory protein-2 (MIP-2). Interestingly, while dexamethasone only partially reduced mononuclear cell infiltration, the plant extracts were especially effective at lowering MIP-2 levels. These results highlight the ability of the extracts to attenuate inflammatory responses by blocking immune cell recruitment and downregulating key inflammatory mediators. Another study focused on evaluating the polyphenol profiles of three Colombian passion fruit species—*P. edulis* var. *flavicarpa* (Maracuyá), *P. edulis* var. *sims* (Gulupa), and *P. ligularis* var. *juss* (Granadilla)—and their capacity to protect the intestinal epithelial barrier under inflammatory stress in Caco-2 cells. A variety of polyphenols, xanthenes, and a terpene were identified, with cyanidin 3-rutinoside, (+)-catechin, and ferulic acid being the predominant compounds in each variety. All extracts effectively maintained transepithelial electrical resistance—a measure of intestinal barrier integrity—despite inflammatory challenge, with *P. ligularis* var. *juss* exhibiting the strongest protective action. These findings suggest that polyphenols from passion fruit could play a beneficial role in maintaining gut barrier function during inflammation.[15,16]

Lastly, the beneficial effects of soluble dietary fiber (SDF) derived from yellow passion fruit peel were examined in a dextran sulfate sodium-persuaded mouse model of ulcerative colitis (UC). Treatment with SDF resulted in notable enhancements in clinical symptoms, comprising reduced weight loss, preservation of colon length, and a lower disease activity index. SDF also contributed to oxidative balance by regulating glutathione (GSH) levels and enhancing superoxide dismutase activity. Furthermore, it modulated immune responses by decreasing levels of MPO, TNF-α, and IL-1β, while uplifting inflammation lowering cytokines IL-10 and IL-6. Histological analysis confirmed that SDF supported structural integrity of the colon, reinforced the mucus barrier, and reduced inflammatory cell infiltration. These results suggest that SDF could be a valuable adjunctive therapy for managing UC, although additional research is needed to fully understand its mechanisms of action.[17]

***Azadirachta indica* (Neem)**

The inflammation lowering activity of neem seed oil (NSO) was evaluated in albino rats using a carrageenan-persuaded paw edema model. At a lower dose of 0.25 ml/kg, NSO did not show a significant anti-inflammatory response. However, higher doses resulted in progressively greater reductions in paw swelling. The most notable effect—a 53.14% decrease in

inflammation—was observed four hours after administering a 2 ml/kg dose. In contrast, aspirin demonstrated the strongest anti-inflammatory outcome overall. The study concluded that NSO has dose-dependent anti-inflammatory properties, with its efficacy increasing at higher concentrations. Another investigation examined the anti-inflammatory effects of neem leaf extract by targeting the NF-κB signaling pathway, which is closely linked to inflammation, cancer progression, and apoptosis. In human leukemia cells, methanolic neem extract significantly inhibited NF-κB activity under both TNF-α-stimulated and unstimulated conditions. The extract reduced cell viability, prevented the TNF-α-persuaded degradation of IκB, and inhibited the nuclear translocation of NF-κB subunits p50 and p65. It also suppressed IKK activity and induced apoptosis, confirmed by nuclear fragmentation and flow cytometry. These findings indicate that neem extract can regulate key pro-inflammatory pathways and promote programmed cell death, providing valuable insight into its therapeutic mechanisms.[18,19]

Additional research focused on nimbidin, a major active compound extracted from neem seeds, and compared its anti-inflammatory effects to those of phenylbutazone and the steroid prednisolone in various inflammation models. Nimbidin significantly reduced inflammation in carrageenan- and kaolin-induced paw edema, alleviated formalin-induced arthritis in the ankle, and decreased exudate formation in croton oil-persuaded granulomas. In the early phase of inflammation, nimbidin at a 40 mg/kg dose exhibited more potent effects than phenylbutazone at 100 mg/kg. The results support nimbidin's potential as an effective treatment for both acute and chronic inflammatory disorders, positioning it as a broad-spectrum natural anti-inflammatory agent. A different study evaluated the impacts of neem leaf extract (NLE) on lung inflammation persuaded by cigarette smoke and lipopolysaccharide exposure. NLE significantly reduced the infiltration of neutrophils and macrophages in bronchoalveolar lavage fluid. It also lowered the production of reactive oxygen species (ROS), decreased neutrophil elastase activity, and suppressed pro-inflammatory cytokines such as TNF-α and IL-6. Furthermore, NLE downregulated the expression of MCP-1 and iNOS in lung tissue and inhibited the activation of ERK and JNK signaling pathways. It also prevented phosphorylation of NF-κB and IκB. Together, these findings suggest that NLE exhibits strong anti-inflammatory potential and could serve as a therapeutic option for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD).[20,21]

***Moringa oleifera* (Drumstick tree)**

One study analyzed twelve flavonoid compounds in *Moringa oleifera* leaves sourced from sub-Saharan Africa, focusing on key constituents such as quercetin and kaempferol glucosides, as well as their malonate derivatives. To enable accurate quantification, acid hydrolysis was used to convert the flavonoid conjugates into their aglycone forms, yielding recovery rates between 92.6% and 107.5%. The total flavonoid content varied across samples from Ghana, Senegal, and Zambia, ranging from 0.18% to 1.64% (g per dry weight), depending on geographic origin and plant variety. Varieties with higher flavonoid levels exhibited stronger

anti-inflammatory properties. Thermal analysis further revealed that malonated flavonoids were heat-sensitive, breaking down into simpler flavonoid glycosides when exposed to high temperatures. Another experiment evaluated the anti-inflammatory potential of an aqueous *Moringa oleifera* root extract in a carrageenan-persuaded paw edema model in rats. At a dose of 750 mg/kg, the extract significantly reduced paw swelling at 1, 3, and 5 hours post-administration. Interestingly, increasing the dose to 1000 mg/kg did not improve efficacy and even worsened inflammation at the 5-hour mark. In comparison, indomethacin, a standard anti-inflammatory medication, consistently reduced edema across all time points. These results suggest that the 750 mg/kg dose offers optimal anti-inflammatory activity, showing comparable effectiveness to indomethacin in treating acute inflammation.[22,23]

A separate study examined the analgesic and inflammation lowering properties of a water-based *Moringa oleifera* leaf extract in laboratory animals. The extract demonstrated dose-dependent pain-relieving effects across several models, including the writhing, hot-plate, and formalin tests, and also showed strong inflammation lowering activity in the carrageenan-persuaded paw edema model. Notably, the analgesic effects observed in the hot-plate test were partially upturned by naloxone, indicating involvement of central opioid receptors. However, the absence of reversal in the writhing test suggests that additional peripheral, non-opioid mechanisms are also involved. These outcomes provide scientific support for the traditional use of *Moringa oleifera* in managing both pain and inflammation, and highlight its dual mechanism of action. In another study, the inflammation lowering efficacy of aqueous *Moringa oleifera* leaf extract (AEMO) was confirmed at a dose of 200 mg/kg across multiple inflammation models in albino rats. The extract effectively reduced inflammation in carrageenan-persuaded paw edema, cotton pellet-induced granuloma formation, and formaldehyde-induced paw swelling. In all cases, the extract's effects were comparable to those produced by dexamethasone, a standard corticosteroid. These findings reinforce the potential of *Moringa oleifera* as a natural anti-inflammatory agent suitable for treating a wide range of inflammatory conditions.[24,25]

***Zingiber officinale* (Ginger)**

Research has identified ginger (*Zingiber officinale Roscoe*) as a promising natural agent for addressing various chronic inflammatory diseases, including ulcerative colitis, Crohn's disease, rheumatoid arthritis, psoriasis, and lupus erythematosus—all of which involve prolonged inflammation and immune system imbalance. Ginger's key active compounds—6-shogaol, 8-shogaol, zingerone, and 6-gingerol—exhibited potent anti-inflammatory and antioxidant activities, especially providing relief in arthritis. Notably, in lupus models, 6-gingerol was found to inhibit the release of neutrophil extracellular traps (NETs), which are linked to autoimmune responses. Additionally, ginger was shown to downregulate NF-κB expression in psoriasis, indicating its potential as a short-term supportive therapy for inflammatory flare-ups. The study also suggested that ginger may offer protective effects against cancer and can alleviate

chemotherapy-induced nausea, reinforcing its role as a complementary approach to treating chronic inflammation-related conditions. Another investigation expanded on ginger's anti-inflammatory capabilities by exploring the effects of ginger essential oils (GEO), which are rich in terpenes and may exhibit phytoestrogen-like activity. In a rheumatoid arthritis model involving female Lewis rats, GEO significantly suppressed chronic joint inflammation, although it had limited effect during the early inflammation phase or granuloma formation. Interestingly, GEO's anti-inflammatory outcomes were comparable to those of 17-β estradiol, a hormone with estrogenic activity, but without stimulating typical estrogen-responsive tissues such as the uterus or bones. This suggests that ginger's therapeutic effects result from a synergistic interaction between its spicy gingerols and aromatic essential oils, broadening our understanding of its mechanisms.[26,27]

The extract of red ginger (*Zingiber officinale var. Rubra*) also exhibited strong anti-inflammatory and analgesic effects in both acute and chronic inflammation models. In a mouse model of acetic acid-induced pain, doses ranging from 10 to 100 mg/kg of red ginger extract (RGE) significantly decreased pain responses and prevented vascular leakage in the abdomen. In rats, consistent administration of RGE (10 mg/kg) reduced chronic inflammation as indicated by reduced footpad swelling. In vitro experiments showed that RGE inhibited the production of inflammatory mediators such as prostaglandin E2 (PGE2) and nitric oxide (NO) in LPS-stimulated macrophage cells (RAW264). These anti-inflammatory effects were attributed to bioactive constituents like [6]-shogaol, gingerdiols, and proanthocyanidins, which contributed to reducing macrophage activation. A separate clinical trial examined ginger's role in reducing inflammation and oxidative stress in pulmonary tuberculosis (TB) patients. In this study, 69 individuals received either 3 grams of ginger extract daily or a placebo alongside standard TB medications for one month. Blood analysis showed that those in the ginger group experienced significant reductions in TNF-α, ferritin, and malondialdehyde (MDA)—biomarkers of inflammation and oxidative damage—both compared to their baseline levels and the placebo group. These outcomes suggest that ginger may be a valuable adjunct therapy in TB management by attenuating inflammation and oxidative stress.[28,29]

***Allium sativum* (Garlic)**

One study evaluated the impact of aged garlic extract (AGE) on indomethacin-persuaded gastric inflammation in male rats. The findings revealed that the higher AGE dose (200 mg/kg) provided superior protection to the gastric lining compared to the lower dose (100 mg/kg), significantly enhancing mucosal repair and curbing bacterial overgrowth triggered by indomethacin. AGE administration also restored oxidative balance by decreasing elevated markers such as malondialdehyde (MDA), myeloperoxidase (MPO), and tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α), while increasing levels of glutathione (GSH), superoxide dismutase (SOD), and

catalase. These outcomes highlight AGE's antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, and antibacterial properties in healing NSAID-induced gastric damage.[30]

In a separate investigation, the therapeutic potential of garlic oil (GO) was explored using a rat model of colitis induced by dextran sulfate sodium (DSS). GO treatment resulted in notable reductions in colon weight, MPO activity, MDA, TNF-α, and interleukin-1β (IL-1β) levels. Concurrently, it boosted body weight, SOD activity, GSH, and interleukin-10 (IL-10) concentrations. Additionally, GO led to dose-dependent improvements in both the external and internal structure of colonic tissues. These findings suggest that garlic oil provides anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, and immune-regulating effects, indicating its potential as a natural treatment option for colitis.[31]

Conclusion:

This chapter highlights the strong anti-inflammatory potential of *Camellia sinensis* (green tea), *Passiflora edulis* (passion fruit), *Azadirachta indica* (neem), *Moringa oleifera*, *Zingiber officinale* (ginger), and *Allium sativum* (garlic). These medicinal plants demonstrated effectiveness in diverse inflammation models by influencing cytokine production, reducing oxidative stress, and regulating immune responses. Their active compounds present viable natural options or complementary therapies for treating chronic inflammatory diseases with fewer adverse effects than standard pharmaceuticals.

References:

1. Ahmed AU. An overview of inflammation: mechanism and consequences. *Front Biol (Beijing)*. 2011;6(4):274–81.
2. Chen L, Deng H, Cui H, Fang J, Zuo Z, Deng J, *et al.* Inflammatory responses and inflammation-associated diseases in organs. *Oncotarget*. 2017;9(6):7204–18.
3. Rainsford KD. Profile and mechanisms of gastrointestinal and other side effects of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs). *Am J Med*. 1999;107(6):27–35.
4. Triantafyllidi A, Xanthos T, Papalois A, Triantafillidis JK. Herbal and plant therapy in patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Ann Gastroenterol*. 2015;28(2):210–20.
5. Singh A. Herbal-based nutraceuticals in management of lifestyle diseases: experience from Indian population. *Futur Integr Med*. 2024;3(2):106–15.
6. Mohd Sahardi NF, Makpol S. Suppression of inflamm-aging by *Moringa oleifera* and *Zingiber officinale* Roscoe in the prevention of degenerative diseases: a review of current evidence. *Molecules*. 2023;28(15):5867.
7. Urrego N, Sepúlveda P, Aragón M, Ramos FA, Costa GM, Ospina LF, *et al.* Flavonoids and saponins from *Passiflora edulis* f. *edulis* leaves (purple passion fruit) and its potential anti-inflammatory activity. *J Pharm Pharmacol*. 2021;73(11):1530–8.

8. Barbalho SM, Leme Boaro B, Oliveira JDSC, Patočka J, Lamas CB, Tanaka M, *et al.* Molecular mechanisms underlying neuroinflammation intervention with medicinal plants: a critical and narrative review of the current literature. *Pharmaceuticals*. 2025;18(1):133.
9. Chatterjee P, Chandra S, Dey P, Bhattacharya S. Evaluation of anti-inflammatory effects of green tea and black tea: a comparative in vitro study. *J Adv Pharm Technol Res*. 2012;3(2):136–8.
10. Oz HS, Chen T, de Villiers WJ. Green tea polyphenols and sulfasalazine have parallel anti-inflammatory properties in colitis models. *Front Immunol*. 2013;4:132.
11. Fechtner S, Singh A, Chourasia M, Ahmed S. Molecular insights into the differences in anti-inflammatory activities of green tea catechins on IL-1β signaling in rheumatoid arthritis synovial fibroblasts. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol*. 2017;329:112–20.
12. Mota MA, Landim JS, Targino TS, Silva SF, Silva SL, Pereira MR. Evaluation of the anti-inflammatory and analgesic effects of green tea (*Camellia sinensis*) in mice. *Acta Cir Bras*. 2015;30(4):242–6.
13. Urrego N, Sepúlveda P, Aragón M, Ramos FA, Costa GM, Ospina LF, *et al.* Flavonoids and saponins from *Passiflora edulis* f. *edulis* leaves and its potential anti-inflammatory activity. *J Pharm Pharmacol*. 2021;73(11):1530–8.
14. Nogueira AV, Faria LV, Lopes ME, Viganó J, Martínez J, Eick S, *et al.* Anti-inflammatory properties of yellow passion fruit bagasse extract and its potential role in periodontal wound healing in vitro. *Biomedicines*. 2025;13(5):1134.
15. Benincá JP, Montanher AB, Zucolotto SM, Schenkel EP, Fröde TS. Evaluation of the anti-inflammatory efficacy of *Passiflora edulis*. *Food Chem*. 2007;104(3):1097–105.
16. Carmona-Hernandez JC, Taborda-Ocampo G, Valdez JC, Bolling BW, González-Correa CH. Polyphenol extracts from three Colombian passifloras (passion fruits) prevent inflammation-induced barrier dysfunction of Caco-2 cells. *Molecules*. 2019;24(24):4614.
17. Bueno LR, Soley BDS, Abboud KY, França IW, Silva KSDS, Oliveira NM, *et al.* Protective effect of dietary polysaccharides from yellow passion fruit peel on DSS-induced colitis in mice. *Oxid Med Cell Longev*. 2022;2022:6298662.
18. Naik MR, Bhattacharya A, Behera R, Agrawal D, Dehury S, Kumar S. Study of anti-inflammatory effect of neem seed oil (*Azadirachta indica*) on infected albino rats. *J Health Res Rev*. 2014;1(3):66–9.
19. Schumacher M, Cerella C, Reuter S, Dicato M, Diederich M. Anti-inflammatory, pro-apoptotic, and anti-proliferative effects of a methanolic neem (*Azadirachta indica*) leaf extract are mediated via modulation of the nuclear factor-κB pathway. *Genes Nutr*. 2011;6:149–60.
20. Pillai NR, Santhakumari G. Anti-arthritic and anti-inflammatory actions of nimbidin. *Planta Med*. 1981;43(9):59–63.

21. Lee JW, Ryu HW, Park SY, Park HA, Kwon OK, Yuk HJ, *et al.* Protective effects of neem (*Azadirachta indica* A. Juss.) leaf extract against cigarette smoke- and lipopolysaccharide-induced pulmonary inflammation. *Int J Mol Med*. 2017;40(6):1932–40.
22. Coppin JP, Xu Y, Chen H, Pan MH, Ho CT, Juliani R, *et al.* Determination of flavonoids by LC/MS and anti-inflammatory activity in *Moringa oleifera*. *J Funct Foods*. 2013;5(4):1892–9.
23. Ndiaye M, Dieye AM, Mariko F, Tall A, Faye B. Contribution to the study of the anti-inflammatory activity of *Moringa oleifera* (Moringaceae). *Dakar Med*. 2002;47(2):210–2.
24. Sulaiman MR, Zakaria ZA, Bujarimin AS, Somchit MN, Israf DA, Moin S. Evaluation of *Moringa oleifera* aqueous extract for antinociceptive and anti-inflammatory activities in animal models. *Pharm Biol*. 2008;46(12):838–45.
25. Mittal A, Sharma M, David A, Vishwakarma P, Saini M, Goel M, *et al.* An experimental study to evaluate the anti-inflammatory effect of *Moringa oleifera* leaves in animal models. *Int J Basic Clin Pharmacol*. 2017;6(2):452–7.
26. Ballester P, Cerdá B, Arcusa R, Marhuenda J, Yamedjeu K, Zafrilla P. Effect of ginger on inflammatory diseases. *Molecules*. 2022;27(21):7223.
27. Funk JL, Frye JB, Oyarzo JN, Chen J, Zhang H, Timmermann BN. Anti-inflammatory effects of the essential oils of ginger (*Zingiber officinale* Roscoe) in experimental rheumatoid arthritis. *PharmaNutrition*. 2016;4(3):123–31.
28. Shimoda H, Shan SJ, Tanaka J, Seki A, Seo JW, Kasajima N, *et al.* Anti-inflammatory properties of red ginger (*Zingiber officinale* var. *Rubra*) extract and suppression of nitric oxide production by its constituents. *J Med Food*. 2010;13(1):156–62.
29. Kulkarni RA, Deshpande AR. Anti-inflammatory and antioxidant effect of ginger in tuberculosis. *J Complement Integr Med*. 2016;13(2):201–6.
30. Badr GM, Al-Mulhim JA. The protective effect of aged garlic extract on nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug-induced gastric inflammations in male albino rats. *Evid Based Complement Alternat Med*. 2014;2014:759642.
31. Balaha M, Kandeel S, Elwan W. Garlic oil inhibits dextran sodium sulfate-induced ulcerative colitis in rats. *Life Sci*. 2016;146:40–51.

UNLOCKING NATURE'S DEFENSE: THE ANTIMICROBIAL POWER OF HERBAL MEDICINE

Dhanya B. Sen*, Rajesh A. Maheshwari, Sweta Besh, Ashim Kumar Sen
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara - 391760, Gujarat, India
*Corresponding author E-mail: dhanyab1983@gmail.com

Abstract:

The antimicrobial efficacy of traditional medicinal herbs—including *Ocimum sanctum* (tulsi), *Camellia sinensis* (green tea), *Azadirachta indica* (neem), *Moringa oleifera*, *Zingiber officinale* (ginger), *Allium sativum* (garlic), *Trigonella foenum-graecum* (fenugreek), and *Nigella sativa* (cumin)—has been rigorously evaluated across diverse pathogens. Tulsi's 4% ethanolic extract demonstrated formidable activity against *Streptococcus mutans*, while its essential oil effectively suppressed *S. aureus* (including MRSA) and *E. coli*. Furthermore, tulsi-derived silver nanoparticles exhibited broad-spectrum bactericidal properties. Green tea catechins disrupted bacterial membranes and enzyme systems, while also reducing respiratory and influenza infection rates. Neem leaf and bark extracts, rich in phytochemicals, outperformed isolates against *S. aureus* and *E. coli*, and neem-synthesized silver nanoparticles retained efficacy after repeated laundering. Moringa extracts from leaves, seeds, and roots demonstrated strong antibacterial action, with seed extracts also targeting fungi. Ginger inhibited microbial growth and biofilm formation—including *Candida* spp. and *A. baumannii*—with soybean oil extract maintaining antimicrobial activity even after cooking. Fenugreek leaf and seed extracts showed antibacterial and antifungal capabilities, with seed flavonoids targeting multidrug-resistant uropathogens. Black cumin oils demonstrated dose-dependent inhibition of spoilage and pathogenic bacteria, and cumin essential oil exhibited antioxidant, antimicrobial, and moderate cytotoxic effects. Garlic extracts effectively combated *S. aureus*, MRSA (in vitro), CBP-associated pathogens, oral streptococci (via mouthwash), and *Candida albicans* in diabetic and non-diabetic models. Collectively, these findings position these eight herbs as versatile, potent candidates for developing natural, safe, and sustainable antimicrobial therapies.

Keywords: Tulsi, Green Tea, Neem, Moringa, Garlic, Fenugreek, Antimicrobial

Introduction:

In the face of rising antibiotic resistance and growing concerns over the side effects of synthetic drugs, herbal medicine is experiencing a renewed resurgence as a valuable source of natural antimicrobial agents. For centuries, traditional herbs like tulsi (holy basil), tea, neem, moringa, ginger, garlic, fenugreek, and cumin have been integral to cultural healing practices across the world, used to prevent and treat infections while supporting overall health. These botanicals are rich in bioactive compounds—such as flavonoids, alkaloids, tannins, saponins, and

essential oils—that exhibit potent antibacterial, antifungal, antiviral, and anti-biofilm activities.[1-8]

Scientific studies increasingly validate the medicinal potential of these plants, confirming their potency against a large spectrum of infectious microbes, including strains that are resistant to conventional antibiotics. Tulsi and neem, for example, are well-known in Ayurvedic medicine for their broad-spectrum antimicrobial and immune-enhancing properties. Moringa and ginger offer antimicrobial benefits alongside strong antioxidant and anti-inflammatory actions. Garlic's sulfur-rich compounds demonstrate significant antibacterial and antifungal activity, while fenugreek and cumin extracts have shown promise in combating multidrug-resistant bacteria. Tea, particularly green tea, contributes powerful polyphenols that further enhance antimicrobial defense.[3-9]

By unlocking the antimicrobial power of these herbal remedies, we embrace a sustainable, nature-based approach to managing infections and improving food safety. Bridging traditional wisdom with modern science, these herbs offer promising alternatives in the global search for effective and safer therapeutic options.

***Ocimum sanctum* (Tulsi)**

The antipathogenic potential of Tulsi (*Ocimum sanctum*) extract against *Streptococcus mutans* was explored, with the goal of determining the most effective concentration from 15 ethanolic extract variants ranging between 0.5% and 10%. Prepared via cold extraction, the in vitro study used 0.2% chlorhexidine as a positive control and dimethyl formamide as a negative control. Among all tested concentrations, the 4% Tulsi extract showed the greatest inhibition, forming a 22 mm clear zone. This underscores Tulsi's potent antimicrobial activity, with 4% being the most efficient concentration for suppressing *S. mutans* growth. In a separate study conducted on Tulsi cultivated in Australia, essential oils were analyzed for their antibacterial properties, especially given the increasing resistance to conventional antibiotics. Through broth microdilution techniques, Tulsi oil concentrations of 4.5% and 2.25% demonstrated significant hindering effects on *Staphylococcus aureus* (including MRSA strains) and *Escherichia coli*, though it showed minimal effectiveness against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Chemical profiling identified 54 volatile components within the leaves, flower spikes, and oils, with camphor, eucalyptol, and eugenol as major bioactive agents. These findings suggest Tulsi essential oil may be promising for topical treatment of skin and soft tissue infections.[10,11]

Another investigation highlighted an environmentally friendly method for synthesizing silver nanoparticles using Tulsi leaf extract. Within just 8 minutes, the extract effectively reduced silver ions to nanoparticles measuring between 4 and 30 nanometers. These biologically synthesized particles exhibited broad-spectrum antibacterial activity, demonstrating effectiveness against both gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria. This positions Tulsi as a valuable resource for sustainable nanotechnology in healthcare applications. Further, Tulsi leaf extract

was tested for its antimicrobial potential against *Aggregatibacter actinomycetemcomitans*. The extract, at 5% and 10% concentrations, exhibited inhibition zones equivalent to doxycycline, indicating significant antimicrobial activity. However, the extract was less effective against *Porphyromonas gingivalis* and *Prevotella intermedia*, suggesting its activity may be more targeted to specific periodontal bacteria. These findings point to Tulsi's usefulness as a cost-effective adjunctive treatment for infections caused by *A. actinomycetemcomitans*, though additional clinical research is needed to confirm its therapeutic value.[12,13]

An additional study assessed Tulsi's antibacterial activity at concentrations of 2%, 4%, 6%, and 8% against *A. actinomycetemcomitans* and *P. gingivalis*. The 8% formulation demonstrated the most substantial antimicrobial action, producing inhibition zones of 40.10 mm and 33.79 mm, respectively—comparable to 0.2% chlorhexidine. Statistically significant differences were noted between the various extract concentrations and control groups. These outcomes highlight Tulsi's potential, particularly in higher doses, as an accessible and culturally accepted adjunct to conventional periodontal treatment, especially in resource-limited settings.[14]

***Camellia sinensis* (Green tea)**

A substantial body of research has explored the antimicrobial potential of green tea catechins, revealing their broad efficacy against an extensive variety of pathogens. These comprise oxygen-dependent and oxygen-independent bacteria —both Gram-positive and Gram-negative—as well as various fungi, viruses, and at least one known parasite. Green tea catechins combat microorganisms through multiple mechanisms: they compromise bacterial cell membranes, inhibit fatty acid synthesis essential for bacterial survival, and block several key enzymes such as protein tyrosine kinase, cysteine proteinases, DNA gyrase, and ATP synthase. Furthermore, they inhibit bacterial efflux pumps, which are often implicated in antibiotic resistance. In addition to their direct antimicrobial properties, green tea catechins have demonstrated infection-preventive effects. Animal studies in mice and ferrets indicate that green tea intake can reduce the spread of both bacterial and viral infections. Similarly, human studies have demonstrated that consistent consumption of green tea is linked to fewer fever-related illnesses, lower rates of respiratory tract infections, and a decreased incidence of Influenza A and B. Together, these findings highlight the broad-spectrum antimicrobial and protective benefits of green tea catechins, supporting their potential use as natural agents for boosting immune function and fighting infectious diseases.[15,16]

***Azadirachta indica* (Neem)**

The study examined the antibacterial effectiveness of various phytochemicals extracted from neem (Azadirachta indica) leaves to validate its traditional medicinal uses. Key bioactive compounds like alkaloids, steroids, tannins, glycosides, flavonoids, and saponins were isolated and tested individually, alongside the whole neem extract, at concentrations of 50 mg/ml and 75 mg/ml. The antibacterial activity against *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Corynebacterium bovi*, and

Escherichia coli was assessed using the disc diffusion assay by measuring inhibition zones. Findings revealed that the complete neem extract exhibited superior antibacterial performance compared to the isolated compounds, with the 75 mg/ml concentration showing consistently greater inhibition than the 50 mg/ml dose. These results reinforce neem's traditional role as an antimicrobial agent and indicate that the combined effect of its phytochemicals contributes significantly to its antibacterial strength. In a separate investigation, neem leaf and bark extracts were tested against *Staphylococcus aureus* and *E. coli*. Fresh extracts exhibited better bacteria-inhibiting property than dried ones, and ethanol extracts were more effective than watery versions. *S. aureus* was sensitive to the neem extracts, while *E. coli* was resistant. The antimicrobial effect increased with higher extract concentrations, as demonstrated by larger inhibition zones.[5,17]

Another study highlighted the broad antibacterial spectrum of neem leaf extract against numerous human pathogens, including *E. coli*, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Proteus mirabilis*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *S. aureus*, and *Enterococcus faecalis*. The ethanolic extract was effective at all tested concentrations, with the strongest inhibition seen against *P. mirabilis* at 6.25 mg/ml, outperforming erythromycin. Significant antibacterial effects were also observed against *E. faecalis* at 12.5 mg/ml, showing statistically significant differences when compared with common antibiotics such as ciprofloxacin, ceftriaxone, erythromycin, and gentamicin. These findings suggest neem leaf extract has potent antimicrobial capabilities that may rival or exceed some conventional antibiotics. Additionally, a study explored the Biogenic synthesis of of silver nanoparticles via neem leaf extract, which were applied to sterilize cotton fabric. Characterized by UV-visible spectroscopy and transmission electron microscopy, the nanoparticles were incorporated into cotton discs through three methods: centrifugation with liquid broth, in-situ coating, and dry nanoparticle coating. When tested against *E. coli* using the disc diffusion technique, the treated cotton showed strong antibacterial activity that persisted even after multiple washes. This points to neem-based silver nanoparticles as promising agents for antimicrobial dressings and textile applications.[18,19]

***Moringa oleifera* (Drumstick tree)**

The study demonstrated that the acetone extract of *Moringa oleifera* leaves possesses notable antibacterial activity against several bacterial strains, such as *Escherichia coli*, *Enterobacter cloacae*, *Proteus vulgaris*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, and *Micrococcus kristinae*. Among these, *M. kristinae* showed particular sensitivity, with inhibition occurring at a low concentration of 0.5 mg/ml. The extract exhibited bactericidal effects on *E. coli* and *M. kristinae*, while it acted bacteriostatically against *S. aureus*, *E. cloacae*, and *P. vulgaris*. However, it was ineffective against *Streptococcus faecalis*, *Bacillus pumilus*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Bacillus cereus*, and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Additionally, neither acetone nor water based extracts exhibited antifungal activity against *Candida albicans*, *Penicillium notatum*, *Aspergillus flavus*,

or *Aspergillus niger*, even at higher concentrations. These findings highlight the antibacterial potential of the acetone leaf extract of *Moringa oleifera*, suggesting its possible application in treating bacterial infections. Another study investigated the antimicrobial effects of *Moringa oleifera* seed extracts, which were effective against various bacteria—including *Pasteurella multocida*, *Escherichia coli*, *Bacillus subtilis*, and *Staphylococcus aureus*—as well as fungi such as *Fusarium solani* and *Rhizopus solani*. The extracts showed different levels of inhibition, with bacteria generally more susceptible than fungi. The antimicrobial action was dose-dependent and caused noticeable damage to fungal hyphae and apical branching. Minimum inhibitory concentration tests revealed that *Pasteurella multocida* and *Bacillus subtilis* were especially sensitive to the seed extracts. The antimicrobial efficacy decreased in the presence of cations (Na^+, K^+, Mg^{2+}, and Ca^{2+}), and the extracts were most effective across temperatures from 4°C to 37°C under neutral pH conditions (pH 7). These results support the potential use of *Moringa oleifera* seed extracts as natural antimicrobial agents.[20,21]

An additional study evaluated the antimicrobial properties of various *Moringa oleifera* root extracts—including petroleum ether, ethyl acetate, chloroform, ethanol, and water based extracts—against several bacterial and fungal strains. The ethyl acetate extract exhibited the strongest bacteria-inhibiting property, especially against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. The chloroform extract revealed no effect on *Escherichia coli* and *Proteus mirabilis*. The aqueous extract demonstrated the greatest inhibition of *Penicillium* species and was the only extract to inhibit *Aspergillus niger*. Phytochemical screening discovered the presence of multiple bioactive compounds in the root extracts, such as alkaloids, flavonoids, saponins, terpenoids, steroids, tannins, cardioglycosides, amino acids, and proteins, highlighting the therapeutic promise of *Moringa oleifera* root extracts.[22]

***Zingiber officinale* (Ginger)**

The study investigated the antifungal, bacteria-inhibiting, and anti-biofilm activities of ginger extract against several *Candida* species and bacterial pathogens. Findings showed that the ginger extract exhibited potent antimicrobial effects, with minimum inhibitory concentrations (MICs) varying between 5 and 40 mg/mL depending on the microorganism. It also successfully inhibited biofilm formation in *Acinetobacter baumannii*, *Bacillus cereus*, *Candida krusei*, and *Candida albicans*. The MTT assay indicated no notable cytotoxicity after 24 hours. Interestingly, the minimum biofilm inhibitory concentrations for *C. krusei* and *C. albicans* were higher compared to standard antifungal agents fluconazole and nystatin. The study concluded that ginger extract shows strong potential as an antifungal and antibiofilm agent, providing a promising alternative for treatment amid increasing antibiotic resistance.[23]

In a separate study, the bacteria-inhibiting activity of soybean oil extract from dried ginger powder was tested against 24 strains of foodborne pathogens, including *Escherichia coli*, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Vibrio cholerae*, *Klebsiella* spp., and

Salmonella spp. The ginger extract demonstrated considerable antimicrobial effects across all pathogens tested, with the uppermost inhibition seen against *Salmonella* spp. (11.67±1.53 mm) and the lowest against *E. coli* (8.0±1.73 mm). The inhibition zone against *Staphylococcus aureus* (8.67±2.52 mm) was smaller relative to Gram-negative bacteria. The researchers concluded that the antimicrobial properties of ginger's soybean oil extract persist even after boiling, suggesting its potential application in food processing for enhanced safety.[24]

***Trigonella foenum-graecum* (fenugreek)**

The study revealed that fenugreek leaf extracts exhibit notable antimicrobial activity. The aqueous extract was especially effective against *Serratia marcescens*, while the methanol extract showed strong antibacterial effects against *Bacillus cereus*. Additionally, the methanol extract demonstrated significant antifungal activity against *Trichoderma viridae*. Minimum inhibitory concentrations (MICs) ranged from 6.25 to 25 mg/ml. Thin-layer chromatography identified active antibacterial compounds, with the methanol and aqueous extracts containing higher phytochemical levels than other solvents, suggesting substantial antimicrobial potential in fenugreek leaves. Another investigation found that methanolic extracts of fenugreek seeds had stronger antibacterial effects compared to hot aqueous extracts. The methanol extract produced the largest inhibition zone (30 mm) against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* at 75% concentration, whereas the smallest zone (10 mm) was observed against *Escherichia coli* at 25%. The hot water extract also displayed antibacterial activity, reaching a maximum inhibition of 24 mm against *P. aeruginosa* at 75%, but showed no effect at 25%. Overall, the methanol extract was more potent than the hot aqueous extract and outperformed the antibiotic amikacin.[25,26]

Further studies explored the antibacterial and anticancer effects of fenugreek seed extract. It showed significant antibacterial activity, especially against *Staphylococcus aureus* (22 mm) and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (17 mm). Regarding anticancer effects, the extract inhibited proliferation of MCF-7 breast cancer cells at 400 µg/ml after 72 hours, though it did not cause notable apoptosis or necrosis. No anticancer effects were found on liver cancer HCAM cells or non-cancerous Vero cells. These findings indicate that fenugreek seed extract may have potential as both an antibacterial and anticancer agent. Additionally, the study emphasized that fenugreek seed flavonoid extracts possess strong antimicrobial activity against various multidrug-resistant uropathogenic bacteria. Rich in polyphenols, these flavonoid extracts showed greater antibacterial efficacy than aqueous extracts, particularly against Gram-positive bacteria like *Staphylococcus aureus*. The flavonoids had an activity index between 1 and 2.5 for *S. aureus* and 1 to 1.21 for Gram-negative bacteria including *E. coli*, *Citrobacter freundii*, and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. These results suggest fenugreek could be a promising alternative antimicrobial treatment against resistant bacterial infections.[27,28]

***Nigella sativa* (black cumin)**

This study assessed the antibacterial activity of five different Turkish black cumin oils at concentrations of 0.5%, 1.0%, and 2.0%, utilizing the agar diffusion method. The oils exhibited antimicrobial effects against 24 strains of pathogenic, spoilage, and lactic acid bacteria (LAB), with the strongest activity observed at the 2.0% concentration. *Aeromonas hydrophila* was the most susceptible strain, whereas *Yersinia enterocolitica* showed the highest resistance. LAB were generally more resistant compared to pathogenic and spoilage bacteria. These results indicate that black cumin oil may serve as a promising natural antimicrobial agent for food preservation. Another study explored the antimicrobial, antioxidant, and cytotoxic properties of cumin essential oil. The oil demonstrated antimicrobial activity against *Escherichia coli*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, and *Streptococcus faecalis*. It also showed strong antioxidant performance, surpassing synthetic antioxidants like BHT and BHA, and effectively scavenged DPPH free radicals. At a concentration of 0.1 µL/mL, the oil induced 79% cell death in HeLa cells, likely due to its antioxidant-induced cytotoxicity. In a 30-day oral toxicity trial on Wistar rats, the oil caused a reduction in white blood cell count and significant changes in blood parameters, including elevated hemoglobin and platelet levels. Additionally, it improved the LDL/HDL cholesterol ratio, indicating potential health benefits. The oil's high phenolic content and robust antioxidant activity highlight its potential as both a nutraceutical and a food preservative.[29,30]

***Allium sativum* (Garlic)**

The study found that *Allium tuberosum* (Atu) showed no antimicrobial activity in vitro and had no significant in vivo effects at low doses. Though, higher doses effectively reduced levels of penicillin-sensitive *Staphylococcus aureus* (PSSA). In contrast, *Allium sativum* (Asa) demonstrated in vitro antimicrobial activity against both PSSA and methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA). In vivo, higher doses of Asa and amoxicillin significantly lowered PSSA infection levels, while lower doses had minimal impact. Notably, none of the treatments—Asa, Atu, or amoxicillin—were effective against MRSA in living models. These findings suggest that Asa and Atu may be helpful for managing PSSA infections but are ineffective against MRSA. Another study evaluated garlic's ability to prevent and treat chronic bacterial prostatitis (CBP) in an animal model. During the prevention phase, only 5 rats treated with garlic developed CBP, compared to 41 in the untreated group. Garlic, ciprofloxacin, and their combination significantly reduced bacterial presence in urine and prostate tissues, with the combined treatment showing the most effective bacterial reduction. Histological improvements were also most evident in the combination therapy group. These results support garlic's potential for both the prevention and treatment of CBP, particularly when combined with conventional antibiotics.[31,32]

A different study assessed the antimicrobial effects of two garlic varieties—white and purple—against oral bacteria using both lab and clinical methods. In vitro, the white garlic clone

had a minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) ranging from 0.5 to 32.0 mg/mL, while the purple clone ranged from 8.0 to 64.0 mg/mL against nine *Streptococcus* species. Bactericidal concentrations followed similar patterns. In vivo, a 2.5% white garlic mouthwash used over five weeks significantly reduced levels of *mutans streptococci* and other oral microbes, with lowered bacterial counts persisting for two weeks post-treatment. However, some participants experienced unpleasant side effects, including bad taste, halitosis, and nausea. Despite these drawbacks, both garlic clones demonstrated significant antimicrobial and anti-cavity effects. Additionally, another study showed that garlic extract effectively reduced *Candida albicans* in the liver and kidneys of both healthy and diabetic rats. Diabetic rats, who exhibited elevated blood glucose, weight loss, excessive thirst, and appetite, showed marked improvement after receiving garlic extract (0.25 g/kg body weight). The treatment also significantly reduced fungal load. These findings suggest garlic extract may be beneficial in treating Candida infections, especially in diabetic patients.[33,34]

Conclusion:

The antimicrobial efficacy of traditional medicinal herbs—Tulsi, Green tea, Neem, *Moringa,* Ginger, Garlic, Fenugreek, and Cumin—has been well-established through diverse studies. These herbs demonstrated significant inhibitory activity against a broad range of bacteria, fungi, and viruses, often rivaling or enhancing conventional treatments. Mechanisms include membrane disruption, enzyme inhibition, and biofilm suppression. Their natural origin, low toxicity, and wide-spectrum action support their potential as cost-effective, sustainable alternatives or adjuncts to modern antimicrobials, especially in combating antibiotic-resistant pathogens. Further clinical validation could enhance their therapeutic integration.

References:

1. Mamalis N. The increasing problem of antibiotic resistance. *J Cataract Refract Surg.* 2007;33(11):1831–2.
2. Quave CL. Antibiotics from nature: traditional medicine as a source of new solutions for combating antimicrobial resistance. *AMR Control.* 2016:98–102.
3. Sanandia J, Patel M, Vadia N. Antimicrobial and antifungal potential of Indian spices. In: *Infectious Diseases.* Sharjah: Bentham Science Publishers; 2024. p. 22–73.
4. Arya R, Faruquee HM, Shakya H, Rahman SA, Begum MM, Biswas SK, *et al.* Harnessing the antibacterial, anti-diabetic and anti-carcinogenic properties of *Ocimum sanctum* Linn (Tulsi). *Plants.* 2024;13(24):3516.
5. Francine U, Jeannette U, Pierre RJ. Assessment of antibacterial activity of neem plant (*Azadirachta indica*) on *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Escherichia coli*. *J Med Plants Stud.* 2015;3(4):85–91.
6. Abdalla WE, Abdallah EM. Antibacterial activity of ginger (*Zingiber officinale* Rosc.) rhizome: a mini review. *Int J Pharmacogn Chin Med.* 2018;2(4):000142.

7. Bhatwalkar SB, Mondal R, Krishna SB, Adam JK, Govender P, Anupam R. Antibacterial properties of organosulfur compounds of garlic (*Allium sativum*). *Front Microbiol.* 2021;12:613077.
8. Renzetti A, Betts JW, Fukumoto K, Rutherford RN. Antibacterial green tea catechins from a molecular perspective: mechanisms of action and structure–activity relationships. *Food Funct.* 2020;11(11):9370–96.
9. Lattenni Z, Latnhi A. Education on herbal antibacterial properties of Moringa and Moringa tea training. *Community Service Akseprin J.* 2024;2(1):19–26.
10. Agarwal P, Nagesh L. Evaluation of the antimicrobial activity of various concentrations of Tulsi (*Ocimum sanctum*) extract against *Streptococcus mutans*: an in vitro study. *Indian J Dent Res.* 2010;21(3):357–9.
11. Yamani HA, Pang EC, Mantri N, Deighton MA. Antimicrobial activity of Tulsi (*Ocimum tenuiflorum*) essential oil and its major constituents against three species of bacteria. *Front Microbiol.* 2016;7:681.
12. Singhal G, Bhavesh R, Kasariya K, Sharma AR, Singh RP. Biosynthesis of silver nanoparticles using *Ocimum sanctum* (Tulsi) leaf extract and screening its antimicrobial activity. *J Nanopart Res.* 2011;13:2981–8.
13. Mallikarjun S, Rao A, Rajesh G, Shenoy R, Pai M. Antimicrobial efficacy of Tulsi leaf (*Ocimum sanctum*) extract on periodontal pathogens: an in vitro study. *J Indian Soc Periodontol.* 2016;20(2):145–50.
14. Jayanti I, Jalaluddin M, Avijeeta A, Ramanna PK, Rai PM, Nair RA. In vitro antimicrobial activity of *Ocimum sanctum* (Tulsi) extract on *Aggregatibacter actinomycetemcomitans* and *Porphyromonas gingivalis*. *J Contemp Dent Pract.* 2018;19(4):415–9.
15. Reygaert WC. The antimicrobial possibilities of green tea. *Front Microbiol.* 2014;5:434.
16. Reygaert WC. Potential for prevention of infection by green tea. In: Powell N, editor. *Green Tea and Health: Antioxidant Properties, Consumption and Role in Disease Prevention.* Hauppauge (NY): Nova Science Pub Inc.; 2015.
17. Aslam F, Rehman K, Asghar M, Sarwar M. Antibacterial activity of various phytoconstituents of neem. *Pak J Agric Sci.* 2009;46(3):209–13.
18. Mohammed HA, Omer AF. Antibacterial activity of *Azadirachta indica* (Neem) leaf extract against bacterial pathogens in Sudan. *Am J Res Commun.* 2015;3(5):246–51.
19. Tripathi A, Chandrasekaran N, Raichur AM, Mukherjee A. Antibacterial applications of silver nanoparticles synthesized by aqueous extract of *Azadirachta indica* (Neem) leaves. *J Biomed Nanotechnol.* 2009;5(1):93–8.
20. Moyo B, Masika PJ, Muchenje V. Antimicrobial activities of *Moringa oleifera* Lam leaf extracts. *Afr J Biotechnol.* 2012;11(11):2797–802.

21. Jabeen R, Shahid M, Jamil A, Ashraf M. Microscopic evaluation of the antimicrobial activity of seed extracts of *Moringa oleifera*. *Pak J Bot.* 2008;40(4):1349–58.
22. Raj AJ, Gopalakrishnan VK, Yadav SA, Dorairaj S. Antimicrobial activity of *Moringa oleifera* (Lam.) root extract. *J Pharm Res.* 2011;4(5):1426–7.
23. Aghazadeh M, Bialvaei AZ, Aghazadeh M, Kabiri F, Saliani N, Yousefi M, *et al.* Survey of the antibiofilm and antimicrobial effects of *Zingiber officinale* (in vitro study). *Jundishapur J Microbiol.* 2016;9(2):e30167.
24. Islam K, Rowsni AA, Khan MM, Kabir MS. Antimicrobial activity of ginger (*Zingiber officinale*) extracts against food-borne pathogenic bacteria. *Int J Sci Environ Technol.* 2014;3(3):867–71.
25. Dharajiya D, Jasani H, Khatrani T, Kapuria M, Pachchigar K, Patel P. Evaluation of antibacterial and antifungal activity of fenugreek (*Trigonella foenum-graecum*) extracts. *Int J Pharm Pharm Sci.* 2016;8(4):212–7.
26. Alwan AM, Jassim IM, Jasim GM. Study of antibacterial activities of seeds extract of fenugreek (*Trigonella foenum-graecum*). *Diyala J Med.* 2017;13(1):63–7.
27. Al-Timimi LA. Antibacterial and anticancer activities of fenugreek seed extract. *Asian Pac J Cancer Prev.* 2019;20(12):3771.
28. Benyagoub E, Nabbou N, Aguid A, Alkhudhairy MK, Bendada F. In vitro antibacterial activity of fenugreek seeds' phytoconstituents from Taghit Region (Southwest of Algeria) against the bacterial strains responsible for UTI. *Curr Bioact Compd.* 2021;17(4):339–55.
29. Manjunath NS, Rangaswamy BE, Hafsa J, Ganavi D, Sahana JK, Ullas K. Evaluation of *Nigella sativa* (Black cumin) for anticancer and anti-inflammatory activities. *Int J Herb Med.* 2020;8(5):1–9.
30. Arici M, Sagdic O, Gecgel U. Antibacterial effect of Turkish black cumin (*Nigella sativa* L.) oils. *Grasas Aceites.* 2005;56(4):259–62.
31. Venâncio PC, Figueroba SR, Nani BD, Ferreira LE, Muniz BV, Del Fiol FD, *et al.* Antimicrobial activity of two garlic species (*Allium sativum* and *A. tuberosum*) against *Staphylococci* infection: in vivo study in rats. *Adv Pharm Bull.* 2017;7(1):115.
32. Kim SI, Yim SH, Sohn DW, Lee SJ, Ha US, Han CH, *et al.* Preventive effect on inflammation and anti-inflammatory and anti-microbial effects of garlic extract in a rat model of chronic bacterial prostatitis. *Korean J Urol.* 2009;50(6):602–8.
33. Groppo FC, Ramacciato JC, Motta RH, Ferraresi PM, Sartoratto A. Antimicrobial activity of garlic against oral streptococci. *Int J Dent Hyg.* 2007;5(2):109–15.
34. Bokaeian M, Nakhaee A, Moodi B, Farhangi A, Akbarzadeh A. Effects of garlic extract treatment in normal and streptozotocin diabetic rats infected with *Candida albicans*. *Indian J Clin Biochem.* 2010;25

DENDRIMERS AND HYPERBRANCHED POLYMERS: ARCHITECTURES FOR CONTROLLED AND TARGETED DRUG RELEASE

Piyushkumar Sadhu*, Mamta Kumari, Niyati Shah, Chitrali Talele

[1]Department of Pharmacy,

Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara-391760, Gujarat, India.

*Corresponding author E-mail: piyush.sadhu@yahoo.in

Abstract:

Dendrimers and hyperbranched polymers have emerged as structurally distinct and functionally versatile nanocarrier systems with significant potential in controlled and targeted drug delivery. These highly branched macromolecules possess a defined architecture, multivalent surface functionalities, and tunable molecular weights, allowing for precise control over drug loading, release kinetics, and targeting efficiency. Dendrimers, due to their monodispersity and symmetrical branching, offer well-defined internal cavities for drug encapsulation and external functional groups for surface modification, enabling active targeting through ligand conjugation. Hyperbranched polymers, while more heterogeneous, provide an economically favorable and synthetically accessible alternative with comparable biomedical utility. This chapter provides an in-depth analysis of the synthetic strategies, physicochemical characteristics, and drug delivery capabilities of dendrimers and hyperbranched polymers. It covers their applications in passive and active targeting, stimuli-responsive release (pH, temperature, redox), and intracellular delivery mechanisms. Emphasis is placed on surface engineering approaches to improve biocompatibility, reduce toxicity, and enhance circulation time. Furthermore, the chapter discusses recent advancements in multifunctional dendrimeric systems that integrate imaging agents and therapeutic payloads for theranostic applications. Key challenges, including cytotoxicity, immunogenicity, and regulatory barriers, are critically analyzed to provide insight into clinical translation. Case studies highlighting preclinical and clinical progress underscore their practical potential. Ultimately, this chapter presents dendrimers and hyperbranched polymers as promising nanoplatforms in the evolving landscape of precision medicine and nanotherapeutics.

Keywords: Dendrimers, Targeted Drug Delivery, Nanocarriers, Surface Functionalization, Biocompatibility, Stimuli-Responsive Systems, Polymeric Drug Delivery Systems

1. Introduction:

The advancement of nanotechnology has revolutionized the field of drug delivery by enabling the design of nanoscale carriers that can overcome the limitations of conventional

pharmaceutical for:mulations. Among various nanocarrier platforms, dendrimers and hyperbranched polymers represent a distinct class of synthetic macromolecules that exhibit unique structural and functional properties, making them particularly suitable for precision drug delivery applications. These branched polymers possess a three-dimensional architecture with a high density of surface functional groups and internal cavities, allowing for enhanced drug loading, controlled release profiles, and tunable biocompatibility [1,2]. Dendrimers, characterized by their monodisperse and highly symmetrical structure, are synthesized through iterative branching generations, resulting in defined molecular weights and uniform size distributions. This architectural precision enables predictable pharmacokinetics and facilitates surface engineering for targeted delivery [3]. In contrast, hyperbranched polymers, though less uniform and synthesized in a single-step polymerization process, offer a cost-effective alternative with considerable structural similarity to dendrimers and promising biomedical applications [4,5].

These polymers have demonstrated significant potential in controlled and site-specific delivery of a wide range of therapeutic agents, including small molecules, peptides, proteins, and nucleic acids. Through passive targeting mechanisms such as the enhanced permeability and retention (EPR) effect, or active targeting via ligand-receptor interactions, these nanocarriers can preferentially accumulate at disease sites while minimizing systemic toxicity [6]. Moreover, their capacity to respond to physiological stimuli (e.g., pH, redox, or enzymatic conditions) further enhances their suitability for smart, on-demand drug release [7,8]. This chapter explores the synthesis, structural features, functionalization strategies, and therapeutic applications of dendrimers and hyperbranched polymers, with emphasis on their role in controlled and targeted drug delivery systems. It also addresses their biological performance, clinical translation potential, and future prospects in nanomedicine.

2. Structural Design and Classification

Dendrimers and hyperbranched polymers exhibit intricate molecular architectures that are central to their function as nanocarriers in drug delivery systems. Their highly branched, globular structures differ significantly from linear polymers, resulting in unique physical and chemical properties. Understanding their classification and structural design is essential to optimizing their performance in biomedical applications.

2.1 Dendrimers

Dendrimers are synthesized through a stepwise, iterative process either divergent (from core to periphery) or convergent (from periphery to core) to yield monodisperse and highly symmetric structures. Each successive layer of branching is referred to as a "generation," and higher generations correspond to increased molecular weight and density of terminal functional groups [9]. Key components of a dendrimer include a central core, internal branching units, and

terminal surface groups which can be functionalized for specific applications (e.g., PEGylation, ligand attachment).

Common types of dendrimers include:

- Poly(amidoamine) (PAMAM) dendrimers
- Poly(propylene imine) (PPI) dendrimers
- Phosphorus dendrimers
- Carbosilane dendrimers

Each dendrimer type possesses distinct chemical properties and biomedical relevance. For example, PAMAM dendrimers are extensively studied due to their biocompatibility and aqueous solubility [10].

2.2 Hyperbranched Polymers

Unlike dendrimers, hyperbranched polymers are synthesized through one-pot polymerization techniques such as self-condensing vinyl polymerization (SCVP) or ring-opening multi-branching polymerization (ROMBP). These methods result in highly branched, three-dimensional structures, although with more polydispersity and less symmetry than dendrimers [11].

Despite their structural imperfections, hyperbranched polymers retain many of the advantageous features of dendrimers, including internal cavities and abundant terminal groups. They can be synthesized at a significantly lower cost and are ideal for scalable pharmaceutical applications.

Examples include:

- Hyperbranched polyesters
- Hyperbranched polyglycerols
- Hyperbranched poly(ethyleneimine)

Table 1: Comparative Summary

Feature	Dendrimers	Hyperbranched Polymers
Synthesis	Stepwise (divergent/convergent)	One-pot polymerization
Structural Regularity	High	Moderate to low
Polydispersity	Low (monodisperse)	High (polydisperse)
Cost of Production	High	Low
Biomedical Applications	High	Moderate to high

3. Functionalization Strategies

The functionalization of dendrimers and hyperbranched polymers plays a pivotal role in dictating their biological interactions, targeting specificity, circulation time, and drug release behavior. By modifying their surface and internal architecture, these nanocarriers can be tuned to enhance pharmacokinetics and biodistribution, and to reduce off-target effects.

3.1 Ligand Conjugation

Ligand conjugation involves the attachment of biological molecules such as folic acid, peptides, antibodies, or aptamers to the surface of the dendrimer or hyperbranched polymer. These ligands enable active targeting by binding to specific receptors overexpressed on the surface of diseased cells (e.g., cancer or inflamed tissues). For example, folate-conjugated dendrimers can selectively target folate receptor-positive tumors, thereby improving therapeutic index [12].

3.2 PEGylation

Polyethylene glycol (PEG) chains can be grafted onto the surface of these nanocarriers to increase hydrophilicity, reduce immunogenicity, and prolong systemic circulation. PEGylation forms a hydration shell around the nanocarrier, which helps evade opsonization and recognition by the mononuclear phagocyte system (MPS), thereby enhancing bioavailability [13].

3.3 Surface Modification

Surface modification with functional moieties such as carboxyl, amine, hydroxyl, or thiol groups allows for further chemical conjugation, pH responsiveness, or charge modulation. Such modifications improve cellular uptake and endosomal escape, critical for the intracellular delivery of macromolecular drugs such as siRNA and proteins [14].

3.4 Stimuli-Responsive Groups

Incorporation of stimuli-sensitive linkers or groups that respond to pH, temperature, redox potential, or enzymatic activity allows for site-specific and controlled drug release. For instance, disulfide linkers degrade in the reductive intracellular environment, enabling the selective release of anticancer drugs within tumor cells [15].

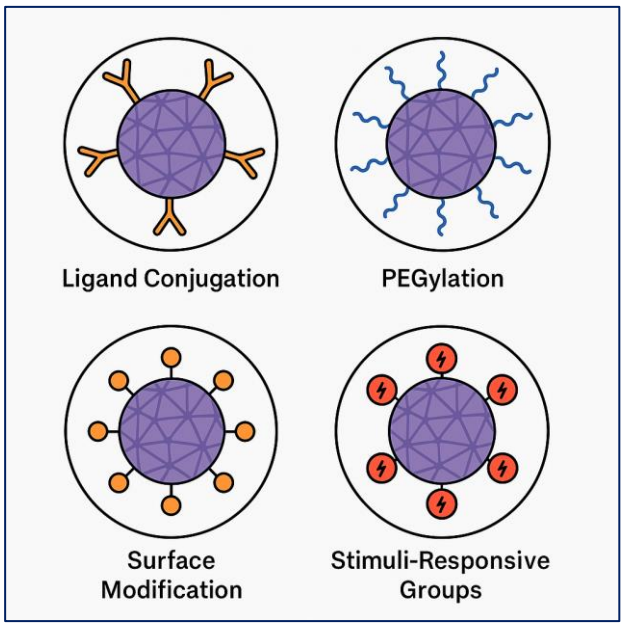

Figure 1: Functionalization strategies of dendrimers and hyperbranched polymers for targeted drug delivery

4. Drug Loading and Release Mechanisms

The efficacy of a nanocarrier system is critically dependent on its ability to encapsulate therapeutic agents efficiently and release them in a controlled and site-specific manner. Dendrimers and hyperbranched polymers offer multiple mechanisms for drug loading and subsequent release, which are dictated by the physicochemical properties of both the polymer and the encapsulated agent.

4.1 Drug Loading Approaches

Drug molecules can be associated with dendrimers and hyperbranched polymers through several mechanisms:

4.1.1 Encapsulation or Entrapment:

Hydrophobic or hydrophilic drug molecules can be physically encapsulated within the internal cavities of dendrimers or within the less-ordered structure of hyperbranched polymers. This non-covalent encapsulation is driven by hydrophobic interactions, hydrogen bonding, or van der Waals forces, which provide protection to labile drugs [16].

4.1.2 Electrostatic Complexation

Many dendrimers, particularly PAMAM and PPI types, contain cationic surface groups that can form electrostatic interactions with anionic drug molecules, such as nucleic acids or low molecular weight therapeutics. This strategy enhances drug loading while preserving drug activity [17].

4.1.3 Covalent Conjugation

Drugs can be covalently bound to the surface or interior functional groups of dendrimers or hyperbranched polymers through cleavable or non-cleavable linkers. This method ensures stability during systemic circulation and allows for triggered release under specific conditions, such as enzymatic degradation or pH changes [18].

The release of drugs from these nanocarriers can be fine-tuned through several mechanisms:

4.2 Controlled Drug Release Mechanisms

The release of drugs from these nanocarriers can be fine-tuned through several mechanisms:

4.2.1 Diffusion-Controlled Release

Drug molecules physically encapsulated within the carrier matrix may diffuse out slowly, with the rate governed by the polymer density, porosity, and the molecular weight of the drug [19].

4.2.2 Environmentally Triggered Release:

Incorporation of stimuli-responsive moieties allows for release in response to specific triggers such as pH, redox potential, or enzyme concentrations. For instance, pH-sensitive

hydrazone or acetal bonds can facilitate release in the acidic microenvironment of tumors or lysosomes [20].

4.2.3 Degradation-Mediated Release

Biodegradable linkers or backbones such as ester or disulfide bonds degrade under physiological conditions, releasing the active drug. This is particularly useful in applications requiring complete clearance of the carrier post-delivery [21].

4.2.4 Enzymatic Cleavage:

Specific peptide sequences or linkers can be engineered to respond to enzymes overexpressed at the target site, ensuring localized drug release [22].

4.3 Kinetics and Release Profiles

Release kinetics are vital for therapeutic efficacy and depend on carrier composition, drug–carrier interactions, and environmental conditions. Controlled release profiles—zero-order, first-order, or biphasic—can be engineered by tuning the polymer design. For example, dendrimers functionalized with PEG and hydrazone linkers show sustained release of doxorubicin over 48 hours, whereas electrostatically loaded siRNA may exhibit rapid release within intracellular compartments [23].

Table 2: Comparative overview of loading and release methods

Loading Method	Interaction Type	Release Mechanism	Advantages	Limitations
Encapsulation	Physical	Diffusion	Simple, reversible	Burst release, low stability
Electrostatic Complex	Ionic	Environmental triggers	High loading of charged drugs	Sensitive to ionic strength
Covalent Conjugation	Covalent bond	Triggered (pH/enzymes)	Controlled, site-specific release	Complex synthesis, potential toxicity

These diverse strategies provide researchers with a versatile toolkit to design customized drug delivery systems for specific therapeutic goals, enabling higher efficacy and minimized systemic toxicity.

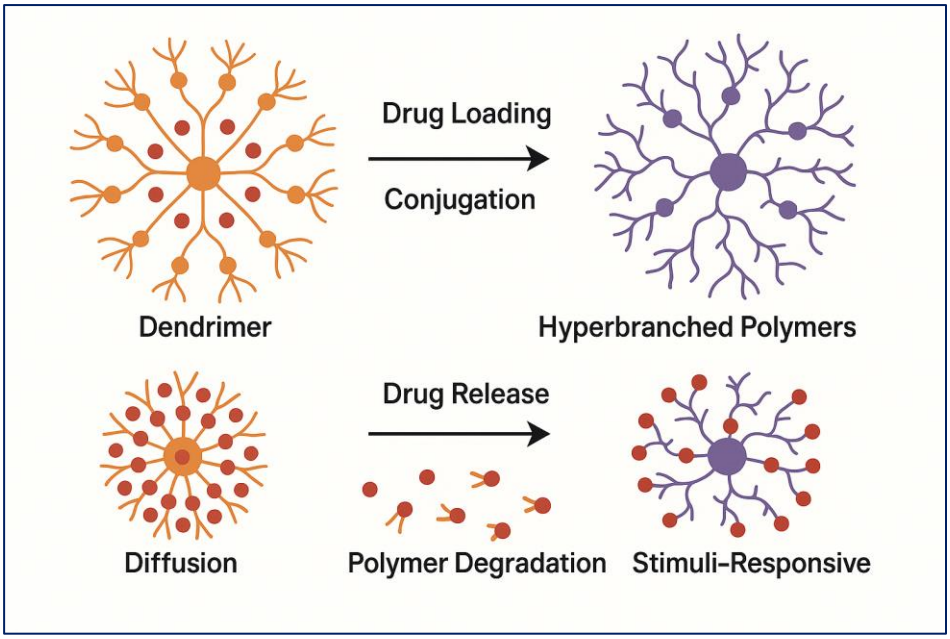

Figure 2. Mechanistic overview of drug loading and release in dendrimers and hyperbranched polymers

5. Therapeutic Applications of Dendrimers and Hyperbranched Polymers

Dendrimers and hyperbranched polymers have emerged as advanced platforms for delivering a diverse range of therapeutics, including small molecules, biologics, and nucleic acids. Their highly tunable structures, multifunctional surfaces, and ability to respond to biological cues make them suitable for targeting various disease states with improved precision and efficacy.

5.1 Cancer Therapy

Dendrimers have been extensively explored in cancer treatment for targeted delivery of chemotherapeutics. Poly(amidoamine) (PAMAM) dendrimers conjugated with folic acid and doxorubicin have shown enhanced uptake by cancer cells overexpressing folate receptors [24]. Similarly, PEGylated dendrimers have been used to reduce reticuloendothelial system uptake and improve tumor accumulation through the enhanced permeability and retention (EPR) effect [25].

Hyperbranched polymers, such as polyglycerol derivatives, have been applied for loading hydrophobic anticancer drugs like paclitaxel. Surface modification with antibodies or ligands (e.g., anti-HER2) allows for receptor-mediated targeting of breast and ovarian tumors [26].

5.2 Antimicrobial Applications

Cationic dendrimers exhibit intrinsic antimicrobial properties due to their ability to disrupt microbial membranes. For instance, PPI dendrimers functionalized with quaternary ammonium groups have shown broad-spectrum antibacterial activity [27]. Additionally, dendrimers have been used to deliver antibiotics like ciprofloxacin, increasing their bioavailability and minimizing resistance development.

Hyperbranched polymers, when conjugated with antimicrobial peptides or metal ions (e.g., Ag^{+}, Zn^{2+}), enhance bactericidal action while reducing toxicity to human cells [28].

5.3 Gene Delivery

Dendrimers, particularly those with amine-rich surfaces, are effective in condensing DNA and RNA into nanoparticles for gene transfection. Their small size and modifiable surfaces improve cellular uptake and endosomal escape. PAMAM dendrimers complexed with siRNA have been used for gene silencing in models of cancer and viral infections [29].

Hyperbranched polyethylenimine (PEI) is a common carrier for gene delivery due to its high transfection efficiency. Its branched architecture facilitates compact packaging of genetic material and improves endosomal release [30].

5.4 Anti-Inflammatory and Immunomodulatory Uses

Surface-engineered dendrimers can deliver anti-inflammatory agents such as dexamethasone to macrophages and inflamed tissues. Targeted delivery reduces systemic immunosuppression and enhances therapeutic outcomes [31].

Hyperbranched polymers have been employed for sustained release of NSAIDs like indomethacin, improving compliance in chronic inflammatory diseases like arthritis [32].

5.5 Cardiovascular and Neurological Applications

Dendrimer-based delivery systems have been applied to transport drugs across the blood–brain barrier (BBB). For example, hydroxyl-terminated PAMAM dendrimers have facilitated the delivery of neuroprotective agents in Alzheimer's and Parkinson’s disease models [33].

Hyperbranched polymers are also used to encapsulate cardiovascular drugs, such as statins and antihypertensives, allowing for controlled plasma levels and reduced dosing frequency [34].

5.6 Vaccines and Immunotherapy

Both dendrimers and hyperbranched polymers have been utilized as vaccine adjuvants and delivery systems. Dendrimers conjugated with peptide antigens and TLR agonists have shown to elicit robust humoral and cellular immune responses [35]. Hyperbranched polymers allow multivalent presentation of antigens and protect them from premature degradation, enhancing immunogenicity [36].

6. Preclinical and Clinical Progress

6.1 Case Studies and Translational Models

Preclinical investigations have laid the groundwork for understanding the therapeutic utility of dendrimers and hyperbranched polymers, with several studies demonstrating their efficacy in vivo. For instance, PAMAM dendrimers conjugated with methotrexate have been evaluated in rodent models of inflammatory arthritis, showing enhanced drug accumulation in inflamed joints and a significant reduction in systemic toxicity compared to free methotrexate [37]. Similarly, in glioma-bearing mice, dendrimers functionalized with targeting ligands such as

transferrin or lactoferrin enabled efficient traversal of the blood–brain barrier (BBB) and accumulation within tumor tissues, resulting in improved survival outcomes [38].

Hyperbranched polymers have also progressed through successful preclinical evaluations. Hyperbranched polyglycerols (HPGs) conjugated with doxorubicin demonstrated extended plasma half-life and reduced cardiotoxicity in murine models of breast cancer [39]. Furthermore, dendrimer-based siRNA delivery systems have shown effective gene silencing in vivo, particularly in hepatocellular carcinoma models, by utilizing active targeting ligands such as galactose for liver-specific uptake [40].

Translational studies have emphasized the utility of dendrimers in real-time imaging and theranostics. A multifunctional dendrimer platform integrating gadolinium (for MRI contrast) and doxorubicin has allowed for simultaneous tumor imaging and therapy in preclinical tumor models [41]. This capability for combinatorial therapy highlights the feasibility of dendrimer-based systems in personalized medicine.

6.2 Challenges in Clinical Development

Despite promising preclinical results, the clinical translation of dendrimers and hyperbranched polymers faces several formidable challenges. One of the primary concerns is cytotoxicity, especially with cationic dendrimers that may disrupt cellular membranes and induce hemolysis or inflammation. Surface engineering strategies, such as PEGylation or hydroxylation, have mitigated some of these effects, but comprehensive safety data in humans remains limited [42].

Pharmacokinetic variability and immunogenicity are also significant hurdles. The biodistribution and clearance of these macromolecules are influenced by their size, charge, and surface functionality. While renal clearance is favored for smaller dendrimers (<6 nm), larger or positively charged systems may accumulate in the liver or spleen, leading to dose-limiting toxicities [43].

From a regulatory standpoint, the lack of standardized characterization techniques and uncertain long-term biodegradability complicate approval pathways. Regulatory agencies such as the FDA and EMA require robust data on manufacturing consistency, batch reproducibility, and stability—areas where dendrimer systems face unique analytical challenges due to their structural complexity [44].

Lastly, scale-up and cost of production remain economic barriers, particularly for high-generation dendrimers requiring multi-step synthesis and purification. Although hyperbranched polymers offer an alternative with lower synthesis cost, their heterogeneity raises concerns regarding reproducibility and quality control in clinical settings [45]. Continued advancement in synthetic strategies, toxicological profiling, and regulatory frameworks will be pivotal in transitioning these nanoplatforms from bench to bedside.

7. Future Directions and Conclusion

7.1 Emerging Trends and Innovations

As the field of nanomedicine evolves, dendrimers and hyperbranched polymers continue to be at the forefront of research focused on precision drug delivery. Several emerging trends are reshaping the design and utility of these polymeric platforms.

7.1.1 Multifunctional and Theranostic Systems

The convergence of therapy and diagnostics termed theranostics is a growing area of focus. Dendrimers conjugated with both therapeutic agents and imaging moieties (e.g., MRI contrast agents, fluorophores, radionuclides) enable real-time tracking of biodistribution and therapeutic response. These platforms facilitate personalized treatment regimens, allowing clinicians to monitor efficacy and adjust therapy dynamically [46].

7.1.2 Stimuli-Responsive and Smart Delivery Systems

Next-generation dendrimeric and hyperbranched systems are being engineered to respond to multiple endogenous (pH, redox, enzymes) or exogenous (light, temperature, ultrasound) stimuli. Dual- or multi-stimuli responsive nanocarriers provide enhanced spatiotemporal control over drug release, especially in heterogeneous tumor microenvironments or inflamed tissues [47].

7.1.3 Biodegradable and Self-Assembling Dendrimers

To address concerns regarding long-term biocompatibility and clearance, biodegradable dendrimers composed of ester or disulfide linkages are under active investigation. Furthermore, self-assembling dendritic structures are being explored to improve drug payload capacity and reduce synthetic complexity, offering simplified scale-up potential [48].

7.1.4 Gene Editing and RNA Therapeutics Delivery

With the rise of CRISPR/Cas9 and RNA-based therapeutics, dendrimers and hyperbranched polymers are being tailored for nucleic acid delivery. Their ability to condense genetic material, protect against enzymatic degradation, and facilitate cellular uptake positions them as promising vectors for next-generation gene therapies [49].

7.1.5 AI-Guided Polymer Design and Predictive Modeling

The integration of machine learning and computational chemistry is accelerating the rational design of dendritic nanocarriers. AI-driven modeling enables the prediction of polymer–drug interactions, toxicity profiles, and in vivo pharmacokinetics, expediting the development pipeline and improving clinical translation prospects [50].

Conclusion:

Dendrimers and hyperbranched polymers represent a versatile and transformative class of nanocarriers that have matured from basic research curiosities to clinically relevant platforms. Their unique architectural features high surface functionality, internal cavities, and tunable

physicochemical properties enable precise control over drug loading, release kinetics, and biological interactions. While several challenges persist, particularly concerning toxicity, regulatory compliance, and scalability, continued innovation in polymer chemistry, surface engineering, and translational modeling is rapidly overcoming these barriers. The integration of multifunctional capabilities and the embrace of emerging technologies such as AI and gene editing further broaden their applicability across a spectrum of diseases. A more personalized and targeted therapeutic era, dendritic polymers are poised to play a central role in the evolution of nanomedicine, offering safer, smarter, and more effective solutions for complex biomedical challenges.

References:

1. Tomalia DA, Reyna LA, Svenson S. Dendrimers as multi-purpose nanodevices for oncology drug delivery and diagnostic imaging. Biochem Soc Trans. 2007;35(Pt 1):61-7.
2. Grinstaff MW. Dendritic and hyperbranched macromolecules for drug delivery and tissue engineering. Chem Commun (Camb). 1999;(24):2519-26.
3. Tekade RK, Kumar PV, Jain NK. Dendrimers in oncology: an expanding horizon. Chem Rev. 2009;109(1):49-87.
4. Frechet JM. Functional polymers and dendrimers: reactivity, molecular architecture, and interfacial energy. Science. 1994;263(5154):1710-5.
5. Gao C, Yan D. Hyperbranched polymers: from synthesis to applications. Prog Polym Sci. 2004;29(3):183-275.
6. Peer D, Karp JM, Hong S, Farokhzad OC, Margalit R, Langer R. Nanocarriers as an emerging platform for cancer therapy. Nat Nanotechnol. 2007;2(12):751-60.
7. Kannan RM, Nance E, Kannan S, Tomalia DA. Emerging concepts in dendrimer-based nanomedicine: from design principles to clinical applications. J Intern Med. 2014;276(6):579-617.
8. Gillies ER, Frechet JM. Dendrimers and dendritic polymers in drug delivery. Drug Discov Today. 2005;10(1):35-43.
9. Chauhan AS. Dendrimers for drug delivery. Molecules. 2018;23(4):938.
10. Kesharwani P, Iyer AK. Recent advances in dendrimer-based nanovectors for tumor-targeted drug and gene delivery. Drug Discov Today. 2015;20(4):536-47.
11. Yan D, Zhou Y, Hou J. Hyperbranched polymers: from synthesis to applications. Chem Soc Rev. 2010;39(11):3791-815.
12. Patri AK, Kukowska-Latallo JF, Baker JR Jr. Targeted drug delivery with dendrimers: comparison of the release kinetics of covalently conjugated drug and non-covalent drug inclusion complex. Adv Drug Deliv Rev. 2005;57(15):2203-14.

13. Veronese FM, Mero A. The impact of PEGylation on biological therapies. BioDrugs. 2008;22(5):315-29.
14. Svenson S, Tomalia DA. Dendrimers in biomedical applications—reflections on the field. Adv Drug Deliv Rev. 2012;64(Suppl):102-15.
15. Ryu JH, Chacko RT, Jiwpanich S, Bickerton S, Babu RP, Thayumanavan S. Self-cross-linked polymer nanogels: a versatile nanoscopic drug delivery platform. J Am Chem Soc. 2010;132(48):17227-35.
16. Svenson S. Clinical translation of dendrimers. Mol Pharm. 2015;12(6):1813-5.
17. Kukowska-Latallo JF, Candido KA, Cao Z, *et al.* Nanoparticle targeting of anticancer drug improves therapeutic response in animal model of human epithelial cancer. Cancer Res. 2005;65(12):5317-24.
18. Duncan R, Izzo L. Dendrimer biocompatibility and toxicity. Adv Drug Deliv Rev. 2005;57(15):2215-37.
19. Najlah M, Freeman S, Attwood D, *et al.* In vitro evaluation of dendrimer prodrugs for oral drug delivery. Int J Pharm. 2006;308(1-2):66-74.
20. Gillies ER, Goodwin AP, Frechet JM. Acetals as pH-sensitive linkers for drug delivery. Bioconjug Chem. 2004;15(6):1254-63.
21. Lee CC, MacKay JA, Frechet JM, Szoka FC. Designing dendrimers for biological applications. Nat Biotechnol. 2005;23(12):1517-26.
22. Khandare J, Minko T. Polymer-drug conjugates: progress in polymeric prodrugs. Prog Polym Sci. 2006;31(4):359-97.
23. Iyer AK, Khaled G, Fang J, Maeda H. Exploiting the enhanced permeability and retention effect for tumor targeting. Drug Discov Today. 2006;11(17-18):812-8.
24. Patri AK, Majoros IJ, Baker JR. Folate-targeted dendrimer-polymer hybrid nanoparticles as folate receptor-targeted cancer chemotherapy. Bioconjug Chem. 2002;13(2):393–6.
25. Lee CC, MacKay JA, Fréchet JM, Szoka FC. Designing dendrimers for biological applications. Nat Biotechnol. 2005;23(12):1517–26.
26. Calderón M, Quadir MA, Sharma SK, Haag R. Dendritic polyglycerols for biomedical applications. Adv Mater. 2010;22(2):190–218.
27. Fischer D, Li Y, Ahlemeyer B, Krieglstein J, Kissel T. In vitro cytotoxicity testing of polycations: influence of polymer structure on cell viability and hemolysis. Biomaterials. 2003;24(7):1121–31.
28. Yang X, Grailer JJ, Rowland IJ, Javadi A, Hurley SA, Matson VZ, *et al.* Multifunctional polymeric nanoparticles for dual drug delivery and PET imaging in cancer treatment. Biomaterials. 2010;31(11):3010–9.

29. Kim TI, Baek JU, Zhe Bai, Jere D, Park JH, Park K, *et al.* PAMAM-PEG-Peptide conjugates for enhanced intracellular delivery of antisense oligonucleotides. J Control Release. 2009;136(3):230–6.
30. Godbey WT, Wu KK, Mikos AG. Poly(ethylenimine)-mediated gene delivery affects endothelial cell function and viability. Biomaterials. 2001;22(5):471–80.
31. Kannan S, Dai H, Navath RS, Balakrishnan B, Jyoti A, Janisse J, *et al.* Dendrimer-based postnatal therapy for neuroinflammation and cerebral palsy in a rabbit model. Sci Transl Med. 2012;4(130):130ra46.
32. Chen Y, Chen Y, Zhang J, He C, Zhang X, Zhuang X, *et al.* Nanomicelles with redox and pH dual sensitivity for targeted delivery of dexamethasone to inflammatory sites. J Mater Chem B. 2014;2(43):7491–500.
33. Nance E, Zhang F, Mishra MK, Zhang Z, Kambhampati SP, Kannan RM, *et al.* Nanoscale effects in dendrimer-mediated targeting of neuroinflammation. Biomaterials. 2016;101:96–107.
34. Gao H, Pang Z, Lu W, Pan S, Ding Q, Chen J, *et al.* Angiopep-2 and activatable cell-penetrating peptide dual functionalized nanoparticles for systemic glioma-targeting delivery. Mol Pharm. 2012;9(3):873–81.
35. Heegaard PMH, Boas U, Sorensen NS. Dendrimers for vaccine and immunostimulatory use. A review. Bioconjug Chem. 2010;21(3):405–18.
36. Satturwar PM, Kadam SS, Muthusekkar MR, Kalmegh BD. Hyperbranched polymers as potential platform for vaccine delivery. Int J Biol Macromol. 2020;163:2553–66.
37. Jain K, Kesharwani P, Gupta U, Jain NK. Dendrimer toxicity: Let's meet the challenge. Int J Pharm. 2010;394(1-2):122-42.
38. Kannan S, Dai H, Navath RS, Balakrishnan B, Jyoti A, Janisse J, *et al.* Dendrimer-based postnatal therapy for neuroinflammation and cerebral palsy in a rabbit model. Sci Transl Med. 2012;4(130):130ra46.
39. Calderón M, Quadir MA, Sharma SK, Haag R. Dendritic polyglycerols for biomedical applications. Adv Mater. 2010;22(2):190-218.
40. Tekade RK, Maheshwari RG, Shukla A, Jain NK. Dendritic cell targeted dendrimers for in vivo gene delivery. Curr Pharm Des. 2015;21(22):3198-209.
41. Nasongkla N, Bey E, Ren J, Ai H, Khemtong C, Guthi JS, *et al.* Multifunctional polymeric micelles as cancer-targeted, MRI-ultrasensitive drug delivery systems. Nano Lett. 2006;6(11):2427-30.
42. Wang B, Navath RS, Menjoge AR, Balakrishnan B, Bellair R, Dai H, *et al.* Inhibition of microglial activation by dendrimer-based drug delivery. J Control Release. 2011;152(3):413-20.

43. He H, Liu L, Morin EE, Liu M, Schwendeman A. Survey of clinical translation of cancer nanomedicines—lessons learned from successful and unsuccessful examples. J Control Release. 2019;295:140-57.
44. Li J, Jia Y, Hou Y, Wu Y, Wang Y, Yang L, *et al.* Dendrimers in clinical translation—perspectives for design and applications. Expert Opin Drug Deliv. 2020;17(1):33-45.
45. Zhou Z, Shen Y. Functional hyperbranched polymers: design, synthesis, and biomedical applications. Chem Rev. 2021;121(10):5580-627.
46. Chauhan AS. Dendrimer nanotechnology for cancer therapy: preclinical developments and clinical challenges. J Control Release. 2018;292:168-83.
47. Wei T, Cheng Q, Min Y, Petersen LK, Bagby TR, Forrest ML, *et al.* Multistimuli-responsive polymeric micelles for cancer therapy. Nano Today. 2014;9(3):313-29.
48. Wang Y, Yan H, Tang S, Li M, Wang J, Zhang J, *et al.* Biodegradable dendrimers for drug delivery. Chem Soc Rev. 2020;49(14):4688-731.
49. Dong Y, Siegwart DJ, Anderson DG. Strategies, design, and chemistry in siRNA delivery systems. Adv Drug Deliv Rev. 2019;144:133-47.
50. Gilad Y, Meirson T, Domany E. Machine learning-based design of nanocarriers for drug delivery. Nat Rev Mater. 2022;7(9):687-704.

DRUG REPURPOSING: EXPANDING THERAPEUTIC HORIZONS

Megha Patel*, Dilsar Gohil, Foram Bhatt, Hemrajsingh Rajput

Department of Pharmacy,

Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara, Gujarat, India. 391760

*Corresponding author E-mail: patelmegha5456@gmail.com

Abstract:

Drug repurposing, also known as drug repositioning, has emerged as a transformative strategy in pharmaceutical research, offering a faster and more cost-effective alternative to traditional drug development. By identifying new therapeutic indications for existing or abandoned drugs, this approach significantly reduces time, financial investment, and risk, particularly in areas of unmet medical need. Historical examples such as sildenafil and thalidomide have demonstrated the success and versatility of this method. The scientific rationale for repurposing is rooted in advances in systems biology, disease pathophysiology, and molecular targeting. A combination of computational tools, experimental screenings, and clinical observations facilitates the identification of repurposing candidates. Although the advantages are numerous—including reduced development timelines, lower costs, and rapid responses during health crises—challenges such as intellectual property issues and regulatory uncertainties persist. Real-world evidence (RWE), artificial intelligence, and collaborative platforms are expected to further enhance the scope and success of drug repurposing. This review provides a comprehensive overview of the methodologies, benefits, limitations, and future perspectives in the field. The integration of innovative technologies and global research efforts is likely to reshape therapeutic landscapes, making drug repurposing a cornerstone in precision and translational medicine.

Keywords: Drug Repurposing, Transformative Strategy, Pharmaceutical Research

Introduction:

Drug discovery is a long, costly, and complex process, often taking more than a decade and costing billions of dollars to bring a new drug to market. Drug repurposing—also known as drug repositioning or re-profiling—offers a strategic alternative by identifying new therapeutic uses for existing or abandoned drugs. This approach has gained momentum due to its potential to reduce development time, costs, and risks, while addressing urgent medical needs.

Unlike traditional drug development, which starts from scratch, drug repurposing capitalizes on existing knowledge of a drug's pharmacokinetics, safety profile, and manufacturing processes. This can significantly accelerate the regulatory approval process and reduce the probability of failure in clinical trials, especially in early-phase studies. A notable example is the use of sildenafil, originally developed for angina, which was later repurposed for erectile dysfunction and pulmonary arterial hypertension (1).

Recent technological advancements, such as artificial intelligence (AI), high-throughput screening, and bioinformatics tools, have further strengthened the drug repurposing landscape. These innovations enable researchers to identify novel drug-disease relationships by analyzing genomic, proteomic, and clinical data on a large scale (2). Furthermore, drug repurposing has proven especially valuable in times of global health crises—such as the COVID-19 pandemic—where drugs like remdesivir and dexamethasone were rapidly redeployed based on preliminary efficacy data (3).

Historical Background

The concept of drug repurposing is not new. Several drugs initially developed for specific indications were later found effective in treating other conditions. For instance, sildenafil was originally developed for angina but was later repurposed for erectile dysfunction and pulmonary arterial hypertension (4). Thalidomide, initially used as a sedative, was repurposed for multiple myeloma and leprosy (5).

Minoxidil is another classic example—it was first introduced as an oral antihypertensive agent. However, during clinical use, patients exhibited excessive hair growth, prompting its repositioning as a topical treatment for androgenic alopecia (6). Likewise, the antiretroviral drug zidovudine (AZT), originally synthesized for cancer therapy, was later repurposed for the treatment of HIV/AIDS, marking a major milestone in antiviral therapy (7).

In some cases, drug repurposing occurred through chance clinical observations, while in others it was the result of structured screening processes. Chlorpromazine, initially used for psychotic disorders, later showed utility in controlling postoperative nausea and vomiting due to its dopamine antagonism, and found applications in oncology and anesthesiology (8). These examples highlight how drug repurposing has historically contributed to therapeutic advancements, often saving time and resources by building on existing drug knowledge.

Scientific Rationale

Repurposing is grounded in the understanding of disease pathophysiology, pharmacology, and molecular biology. The availability of high-throughput screening techniques, computational modeling, and omics technologies (genomics, proteomics, etc.) has allowed researchers to identify shared molecular targets among different diseases, facilitating repositioning strategies (9).

Advances in systems biology and network pharmacology have further supported the scientific rationale for drug repurposing. These approaches enable the mapping of drug-disease interactions through comprehensive biological networks, offering insights into polypharmacology and off-target effects that may be therapeutically beneficial in other conditions (10). For example, by analyzing gene expression profiles, researchers can predict whether a known drug can reverse disease-associated molecular signatures, thus identifying potential new indications.

Moreover, the integration of real-world data such as electronic health records (EHRs), adverse event databases, and clinical trial repositories has strengthened the evidence base for drug repurposing. These large datasets help uncover unexpected clinical benefits or correlations between drug use and disease outcomes, which can then be explored through in vitro or in vivo studies (11). Together, these tools form a powerful framework that bridges computational prediction with experimental validation, making repurposing an increasingly systematic and data-driven strategy.

Methods of Drug Repurposing

1. **Computational Approaches:** These involve bioinformatics and cheminformatics tools to predict drug-disease interactions. Databases like DrugBank, PubChem, and the Connectivity Map (CMap) are utilized to analyze transcriptomic and chemical similarity data (4). Machine learning algorithms have also been employed to identify potential candidates for repurposing based on pharmacodynamic and pharmacokinetic profiles. In silico modeling allows researchers to assess how drugs might interact with novel targets, often using molecular docking and network-based inference methods to prioritize repurposing candidates (12).
2. **Experimental Approaches:** Experimental screening involves testing existing drugs on new disease models. High-throughput screening platforms can evaluate thousands of compounds against cellular or animal disease models (5). This approach provides direct biological validation and can reveal new mechanisms of action or off-target effects that might be therapeutically beneficial. Additionally, phenotypic screening methods—where drugs are tested for observable effects without prior knowledge of the target—have proven effective, especially in complex diseases such as cancer or neurological disorders (13).
3. **Clinical Observations:** Repurposing opportunities may arise serendipitously through off-label use or adverse event monitoring. For example, minoxidil, originally developed as an antihypertensive, was found to stimulate hair growth and is now used for treating alopecia (6). Similarly, bupropion, an antidepressant, was observed to reduce nicotine cravings, leading to its approval as a smoking cessation aid under the brand name Zyban (14). Real-world evidence from case reports, cohort studies, and pharmacovigilance data often plays a key role in identifying such novel uses.
4. **Pathway and Target-Based Approaches:** This method involves analyzing the molecular pathways implicated in diseases and identifying existing drugs that act on similar or overlapping targets. For instance, inflammation and oxidative stress pathways are common to multiple chronic conditions, making anti-inflammatory drugs potential candidates for various new indications (15). Integration of disease pathway databases

with drug target data allows for rational selection of repurposing candidates based on shared pathophysiological mechanisms.

Advantages of Drug Repurposing

One of the primary advantages of drug repurposing is the reduction in development time. Traditional drug discovery involves a lengthy process, often exceeding 10–15 years from initial research to market approval. In contrast, repurposing allows for the use of existing pharmacokinetic, pharmacodynamic, and toxicological data, potentially enabling the bypass or shortening of early-stage trials such as preclinical studies and Phase I clinical trials (16). This accelerates the timeline for bringing therapies to patients, particularly important for life-threatening or rare conditions where time is critical.

Cost-effectiveness is another compelling benefit. The development of a new chemical entity typically requires an investment of over $2 billion, factoring in research, development, regulatory approval, and market introduction. Repurposed drugs, on the other hand, utilize already available data and infrastructure, drastically cutting down research and regulatory expenses (17). Pharmaceutical companies, research institutions, and governments have increasingly recognized the financial sustainability of repurposing models, especially in low-resource settings or for diseases with limited commercial appeal.

Higher success rates also make repurposing attractive. Drugs that have already been approved for human use come with established safety profiles, reducing the probability of failure in later-phase clinical trials. This familiarity with the drug's adverse effects and metabolic pathways increases the predictability of outcomes in new therapeutic areas, thereby enhancing regulatory confidence and speeding up approval processes (18). Furthermore, patient recruitment is often easier for trials involving well-known drugs, further streamlining the clinical research process.

Finally, drug repurposing plays a critical role in rapid response during public health emergencies, such as pandemics. The COVID-19 crisis is a prominent example, where repurposed drugs like remdesivir, hydroxychloroquine, and dexamethasone were evaluated and deployed within months of the outbreak. While not all yielded successful outcomes, the approach highlighted the agility and adaptability of repurposing strategies when time and resources are constrained (19). The ability to rapidly screen and mobilize existing drugs provides a powerful tool for addressing emerging global health threats.

Challenges and Limitations

Despite its advantages, drug repurposing faces significant intellectual property (IP) challenges. Securing patent protection for a new use of an existing drug can be difficult, as original compounds may be off-patent or nearing expiration. Even when a new indication is patented, it may be vulnerable to competition from generic formulations already approved for other conditions. This often discourages pharmaceutical companies from investing in

repurposing efforts due to the lack of guaranteed market exclusivity and uncertain return on investment (20). Without strong IP incentives, funding for clinical trials and further development may become a limiting factor.

Regulatory complexities also pose major barriers. While repurposed drugs may benefit from existing safety data, regulatory pathways for new indications can differ widely across jurisdictions. Some regulatory agencies require new Phase II and III trials, particularly if the proposed indication involves a different route of administration, patient population, or dosage regimen (21). This can slow down market access, especially in low- and middle-income countries where regulatory infrastructures are less robust. Additionally, the absence of standardized guidelines for repurposing contributes to inconsistencies in approval timelines and processes.

Another significant limitation is the incomplete mechanistic understanding of drug action in the new disease context. While some drugs may demonstrate efficacy in preliminary studies or off-label use, the lack of in-depth molecular or pharmacological evidence can hinder their advancement through clinical development. Without clear knowledge of how a drug exerts its effect in the new indication, there is a risk of unexpected adverse events or suboptimal therapeutic outcomes (22). This uncertainty can reduce clinician confidence and affect long-term adoption in clinical practice.

Lastly, data integration and translational challenges can also affect repurposing efforts. Although computational and experimental methods generate promising candidates, translating these findings into clinical application often encounters gaps in data quality, reproducibility, and scalability. For example, promising results from in silico models or preclinical studies may not always translate into human efficacy due to interspecies differences or overlooked biological complexities (23). Bridging this translational gap remains a key challenge in making repurposing a reliable and mainstream strategy in drug development.

Notable Success Stories

One of the most widely cited examples of successful drug repurposing is metformin, a first-line medication for type 2 diabetes. Beyond its glucose-lowering effects, metformin has garnered significant attention for its potential anticancer properties. Studies have shown that metformin can inhibit cellular proliferation and tumor growth by activating the AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK) pathway, thereby disrupting cancer cell metabolism and growth signaling (24). It has also been linked to reduced cancer incidence and mortality in diabetic patients, prompting multiple clinical trials to evaluate its efficacy in breast, colorectal, and prostate cancers.

Another remarkable example is colchicine, a long-established treatment for gout and familial Mediterranean fever. Colchicine exerts its anti-inflammatory effects by inhibiting microtubule polymerization and neutrophil activation. More recently, it has shown promise in

cardiovascular medicine, particularly in reducing the risk of recurrent ischemic events after myocardial infarction. The COLCOT trial demonstrated that low-dose colchicine significantly lowered the incidence of cardiovascular complications in post-heart attack patients, potentially marking a shift in secondary prevention strategies (25).

Colchicine also gained attention during the COVID-19 pandemic due to its potential to modulate the exaggerated inflammatory response associated with severe cases. Its ability to suppress inflammasome activation and cytokine release offered a rationale for its evaluation in COVID-19 treatment protocols. Preliminary studies suggested that colchicine could reduce hospitalization duration and inflammatory complications, although further trials were needed to confirm these findings (26).

These success stories highlight the potential of drug repurposing to uncover new therapeutic uses for established medications. By leveraging decades of clinical experience and safety data, researchers and clinicians can rapidly translate repurposed drugs into new treatment domains. Such examples also underscore the importance of integrating clinical observation, molecular research, and real-world data to guide repurposing efforts effectively (27).

Table 1: Examples of Repurposed Drugs

Drug Name	**Original Indication**	**Repurposed / New Indication**
Metformin	Type 2 Diabetes	Cancer prevention and treatment
Colchicine	Gout, Familial Mediterranean Fever	Cardiovascular diseases, COVID-19
Sildenafil	Angina	Erectile dysfunction, Pulmonary arterial hypertension
Thalidomide	Sedative, Morning Sickness	Multiple myeloma, Leprosy
Minoxidil	Hypertension	Alopecia (hair loss)
Bupropion	Depression	Smoking cessation
Amantadine	Influenza A	Parkinson's disease
Hydroxychloroquine	Malaria, Lupus	Investigated for COVID-19
Remdesivir	Ebola (initial development)	COVID-19 (Emergency Use)
Aspirin	Pain, Fever	Cardiovascular disease prevention
Propranolol	Hypertension	Migraine, Anxiety, PTSD

Future Perspectives

The landscape of drug repurposing is rapidly evolving with the integration of artificial intelligence (AI), machine learning, and big data analytics. These tools have the potential to revolutionize the way researchers identify new therapeutic uses for existing drugs. AI algorithms can process and analyze enormous datasets—including electronic health records, molecular databases, and clinical trial results—to uncover patterns and relationships that may not be apparent through conventional research methods (28). This computational approach can significantly reduce the time and cost required to generate viable repurposing hypotheses.

In addition to AI, systems biology and network pharmacology offer a more comprehensive understanding of disease mechanisms. By viewing diseases as complex networks of interacting genes, proteins, and pathways, researchers can identify overlapping biological processes between different conditions. This network-based approach enables the discovery of multi-target drugs or compounds suitable for diseases with multifactorial pathologies such as cancer or neurodegenerative disorders (29). Integration of multi-omics data—covering genomics, proteomics, and metabolomics—further strengthens the precision and relevance of repurposing strategies.

Collaborative initiatives are playing a vital role in promoting innovation and access. Programs like the NIH's National Center for Advancing Translational Sciences (NCATS) and platforms such as Open Targets provide open-access resources and foster public-private partnerships to accelerate the drug repurposing process (30,31). These efforts, combined with advancements in regulatory frameworks and incentives for investment, are paving the way for a more agile and data-driven approach to drug development. As these technologies and collaborations mature, drug repurposing is expected to become a mainstream strategy in precision medicine.

Regulatory and Economic Considerations in Drug Repurposing

While drug repurposing offers numerous scientific and clinical advantages, its success is often influenced by complex regulatory and economic factors. Regulatory agencies such as the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and the European Medicines Agency (EMA) have established pathways for approving repurposed drugs, including the 505(b)(2) application in the U.S., which allows for the use of existing clinical data to support new indications (32). However, the lack of harmonization in global regulatory frameworks can slow down approval processes, especially when navigating diverse requirements for data submission, labeling, and intellectual property rights. For developers, especially academic and smaller biotech organizations, these hurdles can be difficult to overcome without strong institutional or financial support.

From an economic standpoint, intellectual property (IP) protection and market exclusivity remain major concerns in repurposing initiatives. Since many candidate drugs are off-patent,

there may be limited commercial incentive to invest in costly clinical trials without guaranteed returns. While data exclusivity and orphan drug designations offer some protection, they may not be sufficient to attract large-scale industry participation (33). Innovative models—such as public-private partnerships, open-access compound libraries, and non-profit drug development entities—are increasingly being explored to overcome these limitations and ensure that promising repurposed therapies can reach patients efficiently and affordably (34). Addressing these regulatory and economic barriers is essential to fully realize the potential of drug repurposing as a mainstream development strategy.

Role of Real-World Evidence (RWE) in Drug Repurposing

Real-world evidence (RWE) is becoming a valuable asset in the field of drug repurposing, offering insights derived from routine clinical practice rather than controlled experimental settings. RWE is generated from diverse sources such as electronic health records (EHRs), insurance claims, patient registries, and pharmacovigilance databases, which collectively provide information about drug use, treatment outcomes, and safety in broad patient populations (35). Unlike randomized controlled trials (RCTs), which often involve narrow inclusion criteria, real-world data captures variability in demographics, co-morbidities, and concomitant therapies—offering a more representative understanding of drug behavior across different conditions.

One of the most promising applications of RWE in repurposing is signal detection—identifying unexpected therapeutic effects or off-label benefits observed in clinical settings. For instance, retrospective analysis of EHRs has led to the identification of medications with potential benefits in neurodegenerative diseases and certain cancers (36). Additionally, advanced analytical techniques such as natural language processing and AI-based algorithms are being employed to mine unstructured clinical notes and identify trends that support new indications. These findings can form the basis for hypothesis generation and justify prospective trials or regulatory submissions for new uses.

Regulatory bodies are increasingly acknowledging the role of RWE in decision-making. The U.S. FDA, for example, has issued guidance on incorporating RWE in support of label expansions and post-marketing studies (37). In the context of drug repurposing, RWE can serve as complementary evidence alongside traditional trial data or, in some cases, as primary evidence when RCTs are not feasible. As data interoperability and quality continue to improve, RWE will likely become an integral component in accelerating the identification, validation, and approval of repurposed therapies.

Conclusion:

Drug repurposing represents a transformative approach in modern drug development by offering a faster, safer, and more cost-effective pathway to bring therapies to patients. It has

proven especially valuable in addressing urgent healthcare challenges such as rare diseases, neglected tropical illnesses, and public health emergencies like the COVID-19 pandemic. By leveraging existing safety, pharmacokinetic, and pharmacodynamic data, repurposing efforts can significantly reduce the time and resources needed to progress from discovery to clinical use. Notable success stories, such as those involving metformin, thalidomide, and colchicine, demonstrate the broad applicability of this strategy across therapeutic areas.

Looking ahead, the integration of advanced technologies such as artificial intelligence, big data analytics, and systems biology will continue to reshape the landscape of drug repurposing. These innovations enable researchers to uncover novel drug-disease connections with greater precision and speed. Moreover, collaborative initiatives and evolving regulatory frameworks are enhancing global efforts to streamline repurposing pipelines and make them more accessible. While challenges related to intellectual property, regulatory inconsistencies, and mechanistic gaps persist, the overall trajectory of drug repurposing is highly promising. It is poised to play a central role in precision medicine and the future of therapeutic innovation.

References:

1. Pushpakom S, Iorio F, Eyers PA, *et al.* Drug repurposing: progress, challenges and recommendations. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2019;18(1):41–58.
2. Ashburn TT, Thor KB. Drug repositioning: identifying and developing new uses for existing drugs. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2004;3(8):673–83.
3. Zhou Y, Wang F, Tang J, *et al.* Artificial intelligence in COVID-19 drug repurposing. Lancet Digit Health. 2020;2(12):e667–e676.
4. Boolell M, Gepi-Attee S, Gingell JC, Allen MJ. Sildenafil: an orally active type 5 cyclic GMP-specific phosphodiesterase inhibitor for the treatment of penile erectile dysfunction. Int J Impot Res. 1996;8(2):47–52.
5. Tseng MY, Vasquez RJ, Twigg HL. Thalidomide in the treatment of leprosy and multiple myeloma. Proc (Bayl Univ Med Cent). 2002;15(3):292–5.
6. Rossi A, Cantisani C, Melis L, Carlesimo M. Minoxidil use in dermatology, side effects and recent patents. Recent Pat Inflamm Allergy Drug Discov. 2012;6(2):130–6.
7. Broder S. The development of antiretroviral therapy and its impact on the HIV-1/AIDS pandemic. Antiviral Res. 2010;85(1):1–18.
8. López-Muñoz F, Alamo C. Historical evolution of the neurotransmission concept. J Neural Transm. 2009;116(4):515–33.
9. Li J, Zheng S, Chen B, *et al.* A survey of current trends in computational drug repositioning. Brief Bioinform. 2016;17(1):2–12.
10. Barabási AL, Gulbahce N, Loscalzo J. Network medicine: a network-based approach to human disease. Nat Rev Genet. 2011;12(1):56–68.

11. Himmelstein DS, Lizee A, Hessler C, *et al.* Systematic integration of biomedical knowledge prioritizes drugs for repurposing. eLife. 2017;6:e26726.
12. Brown AS, Patel CJ. A standard database for drug repositioning. Sci Data. 2017;4:170029.
13. Wagner BK, Schreiber SL. The power of sophisticated phenotypic screening and modern mechanism-of-action methods. Cell Chem Biol. 2016;23(1):3–9.
14. Hurt RD, Sachs DP, Glover ED, *et al.* A comparison of sustained-release bupropion and placebo for smoking cessation. N Engl J Med. 1997;337(17):1195–202.
15. Nosengo N. Can you teach old drugs new tricks? Nature. 2016;534(7607):314–6.
16. Corsello SM, Bittker JA, Liu Z, Gould J, McCarren P, Hirschman JE, *et al.* The Drug Repurposing Hub: a next-generation drug library and information resource. Nat Med. 2017;23(4):405–8.
17. Breckenridge A, Jacob R. Overcoming the legal and regulatory barriers to drug repurposing. Nat Rev Drug Discov. 2019;18(1):1–2.
18. Guy RK, DiPaola RS, Romanelli F, Dutch RE. Rapid repurposing of drugs for COVID-19. Science. 2020;368(6493):829–30.
19. Sampat BN, Shadlen KC. The COVID-19 pandemic and innovation: a turning point for intellectual property? Health Aff (Millwood). 2021;40(3):408–16.
20. Scherman D, Fetro C. Drug repurposing for rare diseases: a role for academia. Front Med (Lausanne). 2020;7:607147.
21. Padhy BM, Gupta YK. Drug repositioning: re-investigating existing drugs for new therapeutic indications. J Postgrad Med. 2011;57(2):153–60.
22. Saposnik G, Redelmeier D. Drug repurposing in clinical practice: potential and limitations. JAMA. 2014;311(20):2065–6.
23. Heckman-Stoddard BM, DeCensi A, Sahasrabuddhe VV, Ford LG. Repurposing metformin for the prevention of cancer and cancer recurrence. Diabetologia. 2017;60(9):1639–47.
24. Tardif JC, Kouz S, Waters DD, *et al.* Efficacy and safety of low-dose colchicine after myocardial infarction. N Engl J Med. 2019;381(26):2497–505.
25. Deftereos SG, Giannopoulos G, Vrachatis DA, *et al.* Effect of colchicine vs standard care on cardiac and inflammatory biomarkers and clinical outcomes in patients hospitalized with coronavirus disease 2019. JAMA Netw Open. 2020;3(6):e2013136.
26. Zhavoronkov A, Ivanenkov YA, Aliper A, *et al.* Deep learning enables rapid identification of potent DDR1 kinase inhibitors. Nat Biotechnol. 2019;37(9):1038–40.
27. Guney E, Oliva B. Exploiting protein–protein interaction networks for genome-wide disease–gene prioritization. PLOS ONE. 2012;7(9):e43557.

28. National Center for Advancing Translational Sciences (NCATS). NCATS drug repurposing program. 2023. Available from: https://ncats.nih.gov/preclinical/repurpose
29. Scherman D. The future of drug repurposing. Expert Opin Drug Discov. 2021;16(4):393–5.
30. U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). Guidance for Industry: Applications Covered by Section 505(b)(2). 2022. Available from: https://www.fda.gov/media/85675/download
31. Chong CR, Sullivan DJ. New uses for old drugs. Nature. 2007;448(7154):645–6.
32. Mucke HAM. Drug Repositioning: Extracting Added Value from Prior R&D Investments. Drug Discov World. 2010;11(2):57–62.
33. Corrigan-Curay J, Sacks L, Woodcock J. Real-world evidence and real-world data for evaluating drug safety and effectiveness. JAMA. 2018;320(9):867–8.
34. Shah NH, Tenenbaum JD, Altman RB. Big data and predictive analytics: Recalibrating expectations. JAMA. 2015;313(14):1351–2.
35. U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). Framework for FDA's Real-World Evidence Program. 2018. Available from: https://www.fda.gov/media/120060/download
36. Sirota M, Dudley JT, Kim J, *et al.* Discovery and preclinical validation of drug indications using compendia of public gene expression data. Sci Transl Med. 2011;3(96):96ra77.
37. Dudley JT, Deshpande T, Butte AJ. Exploiting drug–disease relationships for computational drug repositioning. Brief Bioinform. 2011;12(4):303–11

DIETARY APPROACHES FOR MANAGING NON-ALCOHOLIC FATTY LIVER DISEASE

Komal Parmar
Department of Dietetics, Zydus Hospital, Ahmedabad

Introduction:

Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is defined by the accumulation of fat in the liver exceeding 5% of hepatocytes, occurring in individuals who consume little or no alcohol—typically less than 20 grams per day for women and 30 grams for men[1]. Recognized as the hepatic manifestation of metabolic syndrome, NAFLD is commonly associated with obesity, type 2 diabetes, insulin resistance, and dyslipidemia[2]. It encompasses a disease continuum from simple steatosis to non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH), fibrosis, cirrhosis, and even hepato-cellular carcinoma.

Globally, the prevalence of NAFLD has increased dramatically due to unhealthy diets, sedentary lifestyles, and rising obesity rates. Studies estimate that 25%–30% of the adult population worldwide is affected, with even higher rates reported in regions like South America and the Middle East[3]. The condition is now being identified in children and adolescents, underscoring the public health concern[4].

Although simple steatosis is often benign and reversible, it may progress to NASH in a significant number of patients[5]. Persistent inflammation and liver cell injury in NASH can result in fibrosis, cirrhosis, and ultimately liver failure. NAFLD has emerged as a leading cause of liver transplantation in developed countries[6]. Moreover, it increases the risk of cardiovascular disease, type 2 diabetes, and chronic kidney disease[7].

Currently, there are no approved pharmacologic treatments for NAFLD. Thus, dietary and lifestyle changes represent the cornerstone of therapy. Nutritional interventions are shown to reduce liver fat, enhance insulin sensitivity, and halt or reverse disease progression[8]. This chapter outlines the dietary strategies for NAFLD, highlighting evidence-based approaches and the rationale for individualized nutrition therapy.

Pathophysiology of NAFLD

The pathogenesis of NAFLD involves multiple interacting pathways. Central to its development is insulin resistance, which promotes excessive free fatty acid (FFA) release from adipose tissue. These FFAs are transported to the liver, where they are re-esterified into triglycerides, resulting in hepatic steatosis[1]. Additionally, insulin resistance increases hepatic de novo lipogenesis and decreases fatty acid oxidation.

Progression to NASH involves oxidative stress, inflammation, and mitochondrial dysfunction. Mitochondrial β-oxidation of FFAs generates reactive oxygen species (ROS), which

induce lipid peroxidation, DNA damage, and activation of inflammatory pathways, such as nuclear factor-kappa B (NF-κB)[2]. This leads to the secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines like TNF-α and interleukins, driving hepatocellular damage[3]. Mitochondrial dysfunction worsens oxidative injury and contributes to energy imbalance[4].

The gut-liver axis also plays a pivotal role. Dysbiosis alters gut permeability, allowing bacterial endotoxins like lipopolysaccharides (LPS) to enter the portal vein and activate toll-like receptors (TLRs) on Kupffer cells, inciting inflammation and fibrosis[5]. Microbial metabolites further modulate lipid and glucose metabolism in the liver[6]. Hence, NAFLD is increasingly considered a systemic disease with both hepatic and extra-hepatic implications.

Risk Factors and Lifestyle Correlates

Obesity, particularly visceral adiposity, is the most significant risk factor for NAFLD. Excess abdominal fat promotes lipolysis and hepatic fat accumulation. Over 80% of individuals with NAFLD are overweight or obese[1]. Metabolic syndrome, characterized by insulin resistance, hypertension, dyslipidemia, and hyperglycemia, is closely linked to disease onset and progression[2].

Physical inactivity independently contributes to NAFLD. A sedentary lifestyle reduces lipid oxidation and exacerbates insulin resistance. Observational data support an inverse relationship between physical activity and liver fat content[3]. Even moderate aerobic exercise improves hepatic steatosis and metabolic health[4].

Diet is a critical modifiable factor. Diets high in refined sugars, particularly fructose, and saturated fats are strongly associated with liver fat accumulation and elevated liver enzymes[5]. Fast foods and sugar-sweetened beverages contribute to NAFLD, especially among younger populations[6]. Saturated fats promote oxidative stress and inflammatory responses that worsen liver injury[7].

Genetic predisposition plays a role. The PNPLA3 I148M variant is the most extensively studied gene linked to NAFLD, associated with greater hepatic fat content, inflammation, and fibrosis[8]. Variants in TM6SF2 and MBOAT7 also influence lipid metabolism and disease severity[9]. These genetic factors help explain disease variability among individuals with similar lifestyles.

Nutritional Assessment in NAFLD

Effective nutritional assessment guides treatment decisions in NAFLD. Anthropometric measurements such as BMI, waist circumference, and waist-to-hip ratio help identify general and central obesity, both predictive of hepatic steatosis[1]

Biochemical markers include ALT and AST, though not always correlating with histological changes[2]. Fasting insulin, HOMA-IR, lipid panels, and HbA1c offer insights into

metabolic status[3]. Non-invasive fibrosis scores like the NAFLD Fibrosis Score and FIB-4 Index combine clinical and biochemical data to stratify liver fibrosis risk.

Dietary assessment using 24-hour recalls and food frequency questionnaires identifies harmful eating patterns, including excess intake of sugars and saturated fats. These tools are essential for individualized dietary planning and monitoring[4].

Imaging techniques support diagnosis and staging. Ultrasound is widely accessible but less sensitive. Transient elastography (FibroScan) and magnetic resonance elastography (MRE) more accurately assess liver fat and stiffness, helping detect NASH and fibrosis[5].

Evidence-Based Dietary Strategies

Caloric restriction remains the foundational approach to managing non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD). Clinical studies indicate that a weight reduction of 7–10% is associated with significant improvements in liver steatosis, inflammation, and even fibrosis in certain patients. Even a modest 5% weight loss has been found to reduce hepatic fat content, while 10% or more may reverse non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) in a substantial number of individuals[10]. The American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases (AASLD) endorses a gradual and sustained weight loss strategy to avoid risks like gallstone formation and muscle wasting[11]. Typically, a daily caloric deficit of 500–1000 kcal is recommended, aiming for a weekly weight loss of 0.5–1 kg, which balances efficacy and long-term adherence. Behavioral counseling and cognitive strategies significantly aid in adherence to caloric goals and lifestyle adjustments[12].

Macronutrient composition is also critical. High carbohydrate intake, especially from refined sugars and fructose, exacerbates liver fat accumulation by promoting de novo lipogenesis. Fructose, particularly from sugar-sweetened beverages, is metabolized directly in the liver and rapidly converted to triglycerides[13]. Reducing simple sugars and limiting fructose intake to under 25 g/day is thus beneficial. Diets with a low glycemic index (GI)—rich in legumes, whole grains, and non-starchy vegetables—have shown to improve postprandial glucose control, reduce insulin resistance, and decrease hepatic steatosis[14].

Regarding **fats**, replacing saturated fats with monounsaturated (MUFA) and polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFA) reduces hepatic inflammation and lipid accumulation. While saturated fats from red meat, processed snacks, and full-fat dairy contribute to steatosis, MUFAs (like those in olive oil and nuts) and omega-3 PUFAs from fatty fish or supplements have protective effects[15]. Omega-3 supplementation (1–3 g/day) has demonstrated efficacy in reducing liver fat and improving liver enzymes[16]. **Protein intake** also plays a role in preserving lean mass and improving metabolic outcomes during weight loss. In individuals with sarcopenic obesity or insulin resistance, higher-protein diets (20–30% of total energy) enhance satiety and body

composition. Plant-based proteins may further improve lipid profiles due to lower saturated fat content[17].

Specific Dietary Patterns in NAFLD

The **Mediterranean diet (MD)**—rich in vegetables, fruits, olive oil, legumes, whole grains, nuts, and fish—has emerged as one of the most beneficial dietary patterns in NAFLD. It is low in red meat and saturated fats and includes moderate alcohol intake, primarily red wine with meals. Clinical trials, including the DIRECT trial, have shown that MD significantly reduces liver fat and inflammation, even without weight loss[18]. The beneficial effects are attributed to antioxidants, fiber, unsaturated fats, and favorable modulation of the gut microbiome.

Low-carbohydrate and ketogenic diets (LCD/KD) restrict carbohydrate intake, promoting fat oxidation and ketone body production. These diets have been shown to reduce hepatic triglyceride content and improve insulin sensitivity, sometimes independent of weight loss[19]. However, concerns about long-term sustainability, high saturated fat content, and potential nutrient deficiencies remain. Therefore, while these diets may offer short-term benefits, more evidence is needed to confirm their long-term safety and adherence[20].

The **DASH diet** (Dietary Approaches to Stop Hypertension) also shows promise in NAFLD management. Emphasizing fruits, vegetables, low-fat dairy, lean meats, and whole grains while limiting sodium and saturated fat, DASH improves blood pressure, lipid profiles, and liver fat content. Studies have found reductions in liver enzymes and steatosis in patients with NAFLD, especially those with coexisting obesity and hypertension[21].

Intermittent fasting (IF)—including alternate-day fasting and time-restricted feeding—has gained attention for its metabolic benefits. IF stimulates metabolic switching, increases lipolysis, and enhances autophagy, resulting in reduced hepatic fat and improved insulin sensitivity. Emerging data support its modest effects on liver health and body weight, though results are variable. Further research is needed to determine optimal fasting protocols and long-term outcomes[22].

Functional Foods and Nutraceuticals

Functional foods and nutraceuticals offer bioactive compounds that influence key NAFLD mechanisms such as oxidative stress, inflammation, and gut microbiota imbalance. Vitamin E, especially at 800 IU/day, has demonstrated significant improvement in steatosis and inflammation in non-diabetic NAFLD patients[23]. Polyphenols, found in berries, cocoa, and olive oil, help reduce oxidative stress and regulate lipid metabolism[24]. Coffee consumption (≥2 cups/day) is inversely linked with liver fibrosis and may protect against NAFLD progression through antioxidant and anti-inflammatory pathways[25].

Probiotics and prebiotics help restore intestinal barrier function, reduce endotoxemia, and improve liver histology by modulating the gut-liver axis[26]. Additionally, compounds like curcumin, green tea extract, and silymarin have shown anti-inflammatory and hepatoprotective effects, with trials reporting improvements in ALT levels and hepatic steatosis[27].

Physical Activity in Synergy with Diet

Combining physical activity with dietary changes offers synergistic benefits in managing NAFLD. Both aerobic and resistance training independently reduce intrahepatic fat, improve insulin sensitivity, and enhance mitochondrial function. Current recommendations suggest 150–300 minutes of moderate aerobic exercise weekly, along with at least two resistance training sessions[28]. While diet may lead to faster hepatic improvements, exercise supports weight maintenance, preserves lean mass, and improves overall cardiometabolic health[29].

Barriers and Behavior Change Strategies

Despite the benefits of dietary and exercise interventions, barriers to compliance persist. Cultural food practices, limited access to healthy foods, low socioeconomic status, emotional eating, and stress all contribute to poor adherence[30]. Addressing these challenges requires a multidisciplinary approach, involving dietitians, psychologists, and exercise physiologists. Personalized counseling, portion education, and cognitive-behavioral interventions are vital. Strategies like motivational interviewing, self-monitoring, and goal-setting, along with digital health tools, improve adherence and empower patients for sustainable lifestyle changes[31].

In conclusion, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) represents a growing global health concern closely linked to modern lifestyle patterns and metabolic dysfunction. With no approved pharmacologic therapies, comprehensive management hinges on sustained dietary modifications, physical activity, and behavioral strategies. Evidence supports the role of structured weight loss, Mediterranean and DASH dietary patterns, reduced sugar and saturated fat intake, and functional foods in improving liver health. Integration of exercise and individualized nutrition plans enhances treatment outcomes. Addressing psychosocial and environmental barriers is crucial for long-term success. A multidisciplinary, patient-centered approach is essential to mitigate NAFLD progression and its systemic complications.

References:

1. Chalasani N, Younossi Z, Lavine JE, *et al.* Hepatology. 2018;67(1):328–357.
2. Buzzetti E, Pinzani M, Tsochatzis EA. Metabolism. 2016;65(8):1038–1048.
3. Younossi ZM, Koenig AB, Abdelatif D, *et al.* Hepatology. 2016;64(1):73–84.
4. Anderson EL, Howe LD, Jones HE, *et al.* PLoS One. 2015;10(10):e0140908.
5. Tilg H, Moschen AR. Hepatology. 2010;52(5):1836–1846.
6. Rinella ME. JAMA. 2015;313(22):2263–2273.
7. Targher G, Day CP, Bonora E. N Engl J Med. 2010;363(14):1341–1350.

8. Vilar-Gomez E, Martinez-Perez Y, Calzadilla-Bertot L, *et al.* Gastroenterology. 2015;149(2):367–378.
9. Romeo S, Kozlitina J, Xing C, *et al.* Nat Genet. 2008;40(12):1461–1465.
10. Liu YL, Reeves HL, Burt AD, *et al.* Nat Commun. 2014;5:4309.
10. Chalasani N, Younossi Z, Lavine JE, *et al.* The diagnosis and management of NAFLD: Practice guidance from the AASLD. Hepatology. 2018;67(1):328–57.
11. Glass LM, Dickson RC, Anderson JC, *et al.* Total body weight loss of ≥10% is associated with improved hepatic fibrosis in patients with NASH. Dig Dis Sci. 2015;60(4):1024–30.
12. Stanhope KL, Schwarz JM, Keim NL, *et al.* Consuming fructose-sweetened, not glucose-sweetened, beverages increases visceral adiposity and lipids. J Clin Invest. 2009;119(5):1322–34.
13. Toshimitsu K, Matsuura B, Ohkubo I, *et al.* Dietary habits and nutrient intake in non-alcoholic steatohepatitis. Nutrition. 2007;23(1):46–52.
14. Zelber-Sagi S, Ivancovsky-Wajcman D, Fliss-Isakov N, *et al.* High red and processed meat consumption is associated with NAFLD. J Hepatol. 2018;68(6):1239–46.
15. Jump DB, Depner CM, Tripathy S. Omega-3 fatty acid supplementation and NAFLD. J Nutr. 2015;145(8):933–9.
16. Le KA, Tappy L. Metabolic effects of fructose. Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care. 2006;9(4):469–75.
17. Ryan MC, Itsiopoulos C, Thodis T, *et al.* The Mediterranean diet improves hepatic steatosis and insulin sensitivity. J Hepatol. 2013;59(1):138–43.
18. Luukkonen PK, Sädevirta S, Zhou Y, *et al.* The role of LCDs in NAFLD: An MRI and liver biopsy study. Hepatology. 2020;72(4):1193–205.
19. Properzi C, O'Sullivan TA, Sherriff JL, *et al.* Ad libitum low-fat and low-carbohydrate diets: Effects on liver fat content. Am J Clin Nutr. 2013;98(5):1005–12.
20. Soltani S, Jayedi A, Shab-Bidar S, *et al.* DASH diet improves NAFLD risk factors: A meta-analysis. Nutr Rev. 2020;78(5):401–14.
21. Tinsley GM, La Bounty PM. Effects of intermittent fasting on body composition and clinical health markers. Nutr Rev. 2015;73(10):661–74.
22. Sanyal AJ, Chalasani N, Kowdley KV, *et al.* Vitamin E in NASH. N Engl J Med. 2010;362(18):1675–85.
23. Yang SJ, Lim YM, Park S, *et al.* Polyphenol intake and NAFLD: Korean National Health Survey. Nutrients. 2020;12(10):3021.
24. Molloy JW, Calcagno CJ, Williams CD, *et al.* Coffee and liver fibrosis in NAFLD. Hepatology. 2012;55(2):429–36.

25. Ma YY, Li L, Yu CH, *et al.* Effects of probiotics on NAFLD. Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int. 2008;7(4):407–12.
26. Rahmani S, Asgary S, Askari G, *et al.* Curcumin and NAFLD: A systematic review. Phytother Res. 2016;30(4):543–9.
27. Keating SE, Hackett DA, George J, *et al.* Exercise and NAFLD: Systematic review and meta-analysis. J Hepatol. 2012;57(1):157–66.
28. Hallsworth K, Thoma C, Hollingsworth KG, *et al.* Resistance exercise reduces liver fat. J Hepatol. 2011;55(3):547–55.
29. Osei-Yeboah J, Ofori EK, Andoh-Hesse D, *et al.* Barriers to lifestyle change in NAFLD. BMC Public Health. 2022;22(1):1924.
30. Fiechtner L, Lyles C, Kachadoorian C, *et al.* Text messaging to improve adherence in NAFLD: A pilot study. JMIR Mhealth Uhealth. 2019;7(4):e10059.

NUTRITION AND LIFESTYLE POST COVID 19 TRENDS AND IMPLICATIONS

Komal Parmar
Department of Dietetics, Zydus Hospital, Ahmedabad

Introduction:

The COVID-19 pandemic, which emerged in late 2019, has been one of the most disruptive global health crises in modern history, affecting nearly every facet of human life. While the primary focus has been on controlling viral transmission and treating infections, the pandemic has had far-reaching consequences that extend well beyond the realm of infectious disease management. Among the most significant are the changes it has triggered in lifestyle behaviors and nutritional patterns across populations worldwide. Lockdowns, quarantine mandates, and social distancing measures—though necessary to contain the spread of the virus—resulted in dramatic shifts in daily routines, food availability, physical activity levels, and mental health. The closure of schools, offices, fitness centers, and dining establishments forced individuals to adapt quickly to new norms, often leading to increased screen time, reduced mobility, emotional stress, and altered eating behaviors. Moreover, disruptions in the global food supply chain, job losses, and economic instability further exacerbated issues of food insecurity and malnutrition, particularly among vulnerable communities. In this context, both individual and public health have been affected profoundly. The interplay between altered dietary habits, increased sedentary behavior, and psychological distress has contributed to a noticeable rise in non-communicable diseases (NCDs), including obesity, diabetes, and cardiovascular conditions. Simultaneously, the pandemic also catalyzed positive trends, such as renewed interest in home cooking, plant-based diets, immunity-boosting foods, and digital health innovations like tele-nutrition and fitness apps[1,2].

As we transition into the post-pandemic era, it becomes crucial to analyze and understand these lifestyle and nutrition-related trends, not only for their immediate impact but also for their long-term implications on health systems and disease prevention strategies. This chapter aims to provide a comprehensive overview of the evolving patterns in nutrition and lifestyle in the wake of COVID-19, exploring both the challenges and opportunities they present for global health[1]

Shifts in Dietary Habits

The COVID-19 pandemic significantly altered how people around the world acquired, prepared, and consumed food. As countries implemented lockdowns and social distancing measures, traditional food habits underwent major disruptions. These changes were influenced by a combination of limited access to fresh produce, economic constraints, anxiety, and shifting daily routines. Two major opposing dietary trends emerged during this period: an increased

reliance on ultra-processed foods, and a simultaneous revival of home-cooked meals. Both trends have had important implications for nutritional health and behavior.

Increased Consumption of Processed Foods

One of the most notable changes during the pandemic was the sharp rise in the consumption of ultra-processed foods (UPFs). These include packaged snacks, sugary drinks, instant noodles, frozen meals, and other ready-to-eat products that are typically high in calories, unhealthy fats, added sugars, and sodium. The primary reasons for their increased popularity were their extended shelf life, ease of storage, and minimal preparation time—features that made them highly attractive during times of uncertainty and limited mobility[2]. Moreover, panic buying and stockpiling during the early phases of the pandemic further drove consumers toward non-perishable, processed food items. For many, especially those juggling work-from-home responsibilities and family care, processed foods offered a convenient solution in a time of crisis. However, the frequent and excessive intake of UPFs has been linked to adverse health outcomes, such as weight gain, poor glycemic control, systemic inflammation, and a higher risk of developing chronic diseases like type 2 diabetes, cardiovascular disease, and certain cancers. In children and adolescents, increased screen time paired with snacking on such foods during home confinement further exacerbated the risk of unhealthy weight gain. This trend also had psychological dimensions. Stress, boredom, and emotional fatigue associated with the pandemic led many individuals to engage in "comfort eating," often choosing high-calorie processed snacks over healthier options. This behavioral shift underscores the strong connection between mental health and dietary choices during prolonged periods of stress and isolation.

Rise in Home Cooking

In contrast to the uptick in processed food consumption, the pandemic also marked a resurgence in home cooking. With restaurants closed or operating under restrictions and takeout options either limited or perceived as risky due to concerns over virus transmission, many individuals turned to preparing meals at home. This change was especially prominent among families and young adults, who began to explore cooking not just as a necessity but as a creative and therapeutic activity[3].

The home kitchen became a central hub for experimenting with new recipes, traditional dishes, and healthy cooking methods. Online platforms and social media were flooded with videos and posts showcasing home-cooked meals, baking projects, and nutrition-focused content. This digital inspiration contributed to a cultural shift where food preparation became more than a chore—it became a source of enjoyment, self-care, and even community bonding.

Studies have shown that meals prepared at home are generally healthier and more balanced in terms of macronutrient content compared to restaurant or fast-food meals. Home-cooked dishes typically involve fewer additives, less salt, and healthier fats, while offering higher fiber content through increased use of whole grains, legumes, fruits, and vegetables[4]. For

many, this trend also led to better portion control and a deeper awareness of ingredients and nutritional content.

Furthermore, the increase in home cooking provided an opportunity for nutritional education and behavior change. Parents had the chance to involve children in meal preparation, indirectly promoting healthier eating habits and food literacy from an early age. For adults, planning and preparing meals at home fostered mindfulness around eating and helped build sustainable routines that could benefit long-term health.

Although this trend varied across socioeconomic groups—with lower-income households facing barriers such as limited kitchen space, lack of appliances, or financial constraints—it remains one of the more positive lifestyle changes induced by the pandemic. In many cases, individuals who developed cooking skills during lockdown have continued to prioritize home-prepared meals even as restrictions have eased.

Immunity-Boosting Foods

One of the most prominent dietary shifts during the COVID-19 pandemic was the widespread focus on enhancing immune function through food and supplements. In the face of a novel virus and the absence of definitive treatment in the early stages, individuals across the globe sought natural ways to protect themselves. This led to a significant increase in the consumption of foods perceived to boost immunity—such as citrus fruits (rich in vitamin C), turmeric (containing curcumin), ginger, garlic, and herbal teas. Traditional remedies from systems like Ayurveda and Traditional Chinese Medicine also saw renewed interest[5].

In addition, the role of vitamins and minerals—especially vitamin D, vitamin C, and zinc—received heightened attention due to their established involvement in supporting immune responses. Despite the scientific basis for some of these claims, the discourse around "immunity-boosting" foods was often oversimplified. Social media and marketing campaigns contributed to widespread misinformation, leading some individuals to over consume certain foods or supplements under the false belief that they could prevent or cure COVID-19. It’s important to note that while a balanced diet plays a critical role in immune health, no single food or supplement can offer protection against viral infections on its own[6].

Supplement Use and Functional Foods

The fear of infection and increased health awareness during the pandemic also drove a surge in the global market for dietary supplements and functional foods. Products containing vitamins D, C, and zinc were among the most sought-after, with sales increasing exponentially across pharmacies, health stores, and e-commerce platforms[7]. Simultaneously, the consumption of functional foods—defined as foods that offer health benefits beyond basic nutrition—grew in popularity. Examples include foods fortified with probiotics, omega-3 fatty acids, antioxidants, and other bioactive compounds that support gut health, cognitive function, or cardiovascular health.

While targeted supplementation can be beneficial for addressing specific nutrient deficiencies—such as vitamin D deficiency commonly observed during periods of limited sun exposure—indiscriminate or excessive use can lead to health risks. For instance, high doses of fat-soluble vitamins like A and D can accumulate in the body and cause toxicity. Additionally, supplements can interact negatively with medications or exacerbate existing health conditions if taken without medical supervision. Therefore, public health messaging must emphasize evidence-based guidance and encourage individuals to consult healthcare professionals before initiating supplement regimens[8].

Integrated Lifestyle and Dietary Adjustments in the Post-Pandemic Era

Aspect	Pandemic-Era Observations	Recommended Post-Pandemic Practices
Eating Patterns	Increased reliance on processed foods and a rise in home-cooked meals	Aim for 80% fresh, home-prepared meals; restrict processed foods to under 20%; prioritize seasonal produce
Immune Support	Greater consumption of immunity boosters like turmeric, ginger, citrus, herbal teas	Incorporate one citrus fruit daily, ½ tsp turmeric, and ginger tea; stick to RDA for supplements
Supplement Usage	Widespread unsupervised intake of vitamins and minerals	Use supplements only when prescribed, based on nutritional assessments; avoid excessive dosages
Physical Activity	Sedentary behavior increased; online fitness options became popular	Engage in 150 minutes of moderate aerobic activity weekly; integrate home workouts like yoga or dancing
Emotional Well-being	Heightened anxiety, stress, and emotional eating habits	Practice mindful eating and journaling; include 10 minutes of daily relaxation like meditation or breathing
Screen Exposure	Substantial increase due to remote work and digital learning	Apply the 20-20-20 rule: every 20 minutes, look at something 20 feet away for 20 seconds; avoid screen-time during meals
Food Accessibility	Economic strain limited access to nutritious foods	Plan affordable weekly meals using pulses, grains, and local vegetables; support or utilize community kitchens
Culinary Practices	Renewed interest in home cooking	Encourage meal planning and involve family members, especially children, in cooking activities
Healthcare Access	Surge in virtual consultations and online dietary advice	Leverage tele-nutrition services for ongoing care; monitor dietary intake through digital platforms

Impact on Physical Activity

The abrupt shift in daily life during the pandemic had a profound impact on physical activity levels. Government-imposed lockdowns, the closure of gyms and recreational facilities, and work-from-home mandates led to a sedentary lifestyle for many individuals. Physical education in schools was suspended, sports events were canceled, and even casual outdoor activities were limited in several regions. Prolonged screen time, sitting for extended hours, and decreased motivation contributed to a marked decline in overall physical activity[9].

Despite these challenges, some individuals and communities found innovative ways to remain active. Online fitness classes, virtual workout challenges, yoga sessions via video conferencing, and increased walking or cycling in residential neighborhoods emerged as alternative methods to stay fit. While these efforts helped mitigate the negative impacts of inactivity for some, they were not universally accessible, particularly for low-income households lacking digital devices or safe spaces to exercise[10].

References:

1. Ammar A, Brach M, Trabelsi K, *et al.* Effects of COVID-19 home confinement on eating behaviour and physical activity: results of the ECLB-COVID19 international online survey. *Nutrients*. 2020;12(6):1583. doi:10.3390/nu12061583
2. Ruiz-Roso MB, de Carvalho Padilha P, Mantilla-Escalante DC, *et al.* Covid-19 confinement and changes of adolescent's dietary trends in Italy, Spain, Chile, Colombia and Brazil. *Nutrients*. 2020;12(6):1807. doi:10.3390/nu12061807
3. Carroll N, Sadowski A, Laila A, *et al.* The impact of COVID-19 on health behavior, stress, financial and food security among middle to high income Canadian families with young children. *Nutrients*. 2020;12(8):2352. doi:10.3390/nu12082352
4. Mills S, Brown H, Wrieden W, White M, Adams J. Frequency of eating home cooked meals and potential benefits for diet and health: cross-sectional analysis of a population-based cohort study. *Int J Behav Nutr Phys Act*. 2017;14(1):109. doi:10.1186/s12966-017-0567-y
5. Jayawardena R, Sooriyaarachchi P, Chourdakis M, Jeewandara C, Ranasinghe P. Enhancing immunity in viral infections, with special emphasis on COVID-19: A review. *Diabetes Metab Syndr*. 2020;14(4):367–382. doi:10.1016/j.dsx.2020.04.015
6. Gombart AF, Pierre A, Maggini S. A review of micronutrients and the immune system–working in harmony to reduce the risk of infection. *Nutrients*. 2020;12(1):236. doi:10.3390/nu12010236
7. Singh DR, Sunuwar DR, Karki K, Ghimire S, Shrestha N. Knowledge, attitude and practice towards COVID-19 among healthcare workers in Nepal: a cross-sectional study. *PLoS One*. 2020;15(11):e0242126. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0242126

8. Shakoor H, Feehan J, Al Dhaheri AS, *et al.* Immune-boosting role of vitamins D, C, E, zinc, selenium and omega-3 fatty acids: Could they help against COVID-19? *Maturitas*. 2021;143:1–9. doi:10.1016/j.maturitas.2020.08.003
9. Stockwell S, Trott M, Tully M, *et al.* Changes in physical activity and sedentary behaviours from before to during the COVID-19 pandemic lockdown: a systematic review. *BMJ Open Sport Exerc Med*. 2021;7(1):e000960. doi:10.1136/bmjsem-2020-000960
10. Dunton GF, Do B, Wang SD. Early effects of the COVID-19 pandemic on physical activity and sedentary behavior in children living in the U.S. *BMC Public Health*. 2020;20(1):1351. doi:10.1186/s12889-020-09429-3
11. Pietrobelli A, Pecoraro L, Ferruzzi A, *et al.* Effects of COVID-19 lockdown on lifestyle behaviors in children with obesity living in Verona, Italy: a longitudinal study. *Obesity*. 2020;28(8):1382–1385. doi:10.1002/oby.22861
12. Stefan N, Birkenfeld AL, Schulze MB, Ludwig DS. Obesity and impaired metabolic health in patients with COVID-19. *Nat Rev Endocrinol*. 2020;16(7):341–342. doi:10.1038/s41574-020-0364-6
13. Bemanian M, Mæland S, Blix I, *et al.* Emotional eating in relation to worries and psychological distress during the COVID-19 pandemic: a population-based survey in Norway. *Int J Environ Res Public Health*. 2021;18(1):130. doi:10.3390/ijerph18010130
14. Phillipou A, Meyer D, Neill E, *et al.* Eating and exercise behaviors in eating disorders and the general population during the COVID-19 pandemic in Australia: initial results from the COLLATE project. *Int J Eat Disord*. 2020;53(7):1158–1165. doi:10.1002/eat.23317
15. Rodgers RF, Lombardo C, Cerolini S, *et al.* The impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on eating disorder risk and symptoms. *Int J Eat Disord*. 2020;53(7):1166–1170. doi:10.1002/eat.23318
16. Caccialanza R, Laviano A, Lobascio F, *et al.* Early nutritional supplementation in non-critically ill patients hospitalized for the 2019 novel coronavirus disease (COVID-19): rationale and feasibility of a shared pragmatic protocol. *Nutrition*. 2020;74:110835. doi:10.1016/j.nut.2020.110835
17. Barazzoni R, Bischoff SC, Breda J, *et al.* ESPEN expert statements and practical guidance for nutritional management of individuals with SARS-CoV-2 infection. *Clin Nutr*. 2020;39(6):1631–1638. doi:10.1016/j.clnu.2020.03.022
18. Warren JM, Smith N, Ashwell M. A structured literature review on the role of mindfulness, mindful eating and intuitive eating in changing eating behaviours: effectiveness and associated potential mechanisms. *Nutr Res Rev*. 2017;30(2):272–283. doi:10.1017/S0954422417000154

19. Neff RA, Edwards D, Palmer A, Ramsing R, Righter A, Wolfson J. Reducing meat consumption in the USA: a nationally representative survey of attitudes and behaviours. *Public Health Nutr*. 2018;21(10):1835–1844. doi:10.1017/S1368980017004190
20. Satija A, Hu FB. Plant-based diets and cardiovascular health. *Trends Cardiovasc Med*. 2018;28(7):437–441. doi:10.1016/j.tcm.2018.02.004
21. Devereux S, Béné C, Hoddinott J. Conceptualising COVID-19's impacts on household food security. *Food Secur*. 2020;12(4):769–772. doi:10.1007/s12571-020-01085-0
22. Franco M, Alfonso-Sanchez JL, Soria-Fernandez J, *et al.* Use of telehealth during the COVID-19 pandemic: scoping review. *J Med Internet Res*. 2021;23(11):e31267. doi:10.2196/31267
23. Zhang Y, Milinovich GJ, Xu Z, Bambrick H, Mengersen K, Tong S. Monitoring pertussis infections using internet search queries. *Sci Rep*. 2017;7:10437. doi:10.1038/s41598-017-10845-2
24. Wolfson JA, Leung CW. Food insecurity and COVID-19: disparities in early effects for US adults. *Nutrients*. 2020;12(6):1648. doi:10.3390/nu12061648
25. Power M, Doherty B, Pybus K, Pickett KE. How COVID-19 has exposed inequalities in the UK food system: The case of UK food and poverty. *Emerg Food*. 2020;2(1):1–5. doi:10.25561/79820
26. World Health Organization. Stay physically active during self-quarantine. WHO. 2020. Available from: https://www.who.int/news-room/q-a-detail/be-active-during-covid-19
27. UNICEF. Supporting children's return to school during COVID-19. 2021. Available from: https://www.unicef.org/press-releases
28. FAO. COVID-19 and food systems: Policy options to support healthy diets. Rome: Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations; 2020.

Bhumi Publishing, India
June 2025

EXPLORING THE NUTRITIONAL AND THERAPEUTIC POTENTIAL OF WHEATGRASS (*TRITICUM AESTIVUM*): A REVIEW

Ashim Kumar Sen*, Dhanya B. Sen, Rajesh A. Maheshwari, Dillip Kumar Dash

Department of Pharmacy,

Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara - 391760, Gujarat, India

*Corresponding author E-mail: ashims01@gmail.com

Abstract:

Wheatgrass juice, marketed as a "health food," has recently exploded in popularity around the world. Juice obtained from fully grown wheatgrass shoots is rich in nutrients and contains a wide variety of vitamins, minerals, enzymes, chlorophylls, and polyphenols that protect against free radical damage. There is a pressing need to expand consumer access to wheatgrass juice due to its expanding demand. Because of its perishable nature, this product is best enjoyed as soon as it is made. In order to keep a healthy lifestyle and eliminate lifestyle disorders such as obesity, cancer, diabetes, hypertension, etc., nutraceuticals are organic and traditional foods that are consumed nowadays. In recent years, herbal products' popularity has skyrocketed over the world. A nutraceutical supplement, wheatgrass (*Triticum aestivum*) has shown promise in the treatment of cancer. Wheatgrass has numerous useful antioxidant characteristics, including the ability to fight cancer, germs, fungi, and microbes. The herbal plant is worth mentioning as a source of dietary fiber since it contains resistant starch, lignans, phenolic acids, alkylresorcinols, and several antioxidant components, such as carotenoids and tocopherols. Adding wheatgrass to cancer treatment can help patients cope with the side effects of chemo and other medications and boost their chances of a successful outcome in the long run. Wheatgrass has shown promise in the treatment of several cancers, including pancreatic, lung, and breast cancers, according to research. As a result, conventional medication is often used in conjunction with the multi-targeted herbal drug wheatgrass to treat a variety of disorders, including cancer. Wheatgrass is a therapeutic nutraceutical that shows promise in the fight against lifestyle problems.

Keywords: Wheatgrass, Health Food, Anti-Cancer, Anti-Bacterial, Anti-Fungal, And Anti-Microbial Activity

Introduction:

Wheatgrass is a member of the Poaceae family. *Triticum aestivum* Linn is the scientific name for wheatgrass. In 2010, researchers examined 1,000 plants; 356 of those plants underwent clinical trials, yielding information about their pharmacological activities and therapeutic qualities. One of these is wheatgrass, which has extraordinary therapeutic qualities and has a

long history of use in Indian culture. India is home to eight of the world's fifteen or sixteen recognized species of wheat.[1]

The active components found in herbal plants give them nutritional and medicinal value, allowing users to reap the benefits of their consumption. Herbal products are loved and used all over the globe since they are safe and have few adverse effects. Traditional remedies are safe to use, according to the literature. The high concentration of nutritious phytoactive components in wheatgrass—the most palatable crop—led to its selection for this research. These components have the potential to alleviate symptoms of numerous ailments, including diabetes, hypertension, obesity, fungal infections, cardiovascular disease, cancer, and more. Minerals, amino acids, vitamins A, B, C, E, and K are only a few of the bioactive components found in wheatgrass (*Triticum aestivum*).[2,3] The purpose of this review is to organize the nutritional potential and chemoprevention applications of wheatgrass, which are young wheat plantlets. Here we summarize and quote data from different sources to further study the nutritional potential of wheatgrass in treating various cancers. Included in this research is a literature review covering the years 1976–2022, which covers topics such as wheatgrass's nutritional value and its role in chemoprevention. [4]

Wheatgrass is consumed in large quantities in many nations, mostly as dietary supplements and in the form of drinks or pills.[5] Wheatgrass has preventive properties against a wide range of acute and chronic disorders when consumed.[6] Because of its all-natural ingredients and complete nutritional profile, this health supplement is superior to synthetic alternatives.[7] Its high nutrient density and possible health benefits to overall wellness have contributed to its recent surge in popularity.[8] Chlorophyll, certain amino acids, calcium, iron, magnesium, vitamins, B-complex, and selenium are just a few of the vital components found in abundance in this food source.[9] Vitamins, minerals, enzymes, and amino acids abound, and it's a great supply of all of those things. It is essential for the proper functioning of cells and the preservation of overall physiological health through its involvement in a number of biochemical processes.[10] Protease, amylase, lipase, cytochrome oxidase, transhydrogenase, and superoxide dismutase are some of the wheatgrass enzymes that help make it healthy.[11]

Juice from wheatgrass is useful in medicine mostly because of the bioflavonoids it contains, which include apigenin, quercetin, and luteolin, and which have strong antioxidant effects. The significance of these bioactive molecules in reducing oxidative stress is substantial.[12] Many chronic ailments, such as asthma, thyroid disorders, skin diseases, atherosclerosis, acne, Parkinson's disease, joint pain, menstruation troubles, and constipation, can be effectively managed with wheatgrass therapy. Furthermore, it is thought to help manage high blood pressure, diabetes, bronchitis, sleeplessness, dermatitis, infertility, obesity, and flatulence.[13] Wheatgrass has high levels of chlorophyll, a phytopigment with antimicrobial characteristics. It has many positive health effects, such as improving bloodstream health and

restoring general physiological balance.[14] The inhibition of carcinogen metabolic activation is another important function it performs. The high concentration of bioflavonoids it contains is another reason for its antibacterial properties. [15]

It provides a wealth of vitamins and minerals in addition to macronutrients. On top of that, it has a number of enzymes that work together to improve immunological function.[16] Many people think this plant has a lot of health benefits. Primarily, it has demonstrated anti-aging, antioxidant, and anti-inflammatory effects. Additionally, it may aid in the elimination of heavy metals from the body, improve digestion, decrease blood pressure via improving capillary function, promote the formation of lactobacilli, and lessen hair damage.[17] Because it increases the blood hemoglobin level, applying wheatgrass juice as a treatment for iron deficiency anemia is a simple and effective solution. Improving red blood cell synthesis, building blood in thalassemia major, and treating haemolytic anemia as an adjuvant therapy with other dietary components are only a few of their many benefits.[18] Wheatgrass has recently been more popular as a possible antidiabetic agent.[19] In cancer treatment, its bioactive components alleviate symptoms and increase quality of life by acting as antioxidants, anti-inflammatories, and immune-boosters.[20]

The anti-inflammatory and antioxidant properties of wheatgrass are attributed to its abundance of vitamins, chlorophyll, flavonoids, and phenolic substances.[21] Moreover, wheatgrass's polyphenols lessen oxidative stress and the likelihood of acquiring cancer-related illnesses by diminishing the effects of reactive oxygen species (ROS). Because of its antioxidant properties, wheatgrass may play a role in warding off cancer and protecting cells in general.[22]

How much nutrition is in wheatgrass?

The lipids, carbs, and amino acids found in wheatgrass are readily absorbed and metabolized by the body's normal processes. Increasing our fiber intake may help keep our gastrointestinal tract healthy, which in turn makes it easier for the digestive system to work. Wheatgrass is mainly a source of dietary fiber, which helps maintain a healthy digestive tract by increasing stool volume. As a result, wheatgrass is crucial for gastrointestinal health. Also found in wheatgrass are oligosaccharides and lignin.[23,24]

Health Effects of Wheatgrass

Effect of Wheatgrass on Metabolic Disorders

Endocrine problems, organ failures, dietary inadequacies, and toxic agent accumulation or enzyme deficiencies are thought to be the root causes of metabolic diseases.[25] Wheatgrass, in its many forms, is believed to help the body achieve optimal enzyme levels due to its antioxidant and anti-inflammatory characteristics as well as its essential and non-essential enzyme content. The role of wheatgrass in maintaining homeostasis of enzymes in the body is essential.[26] Tyrosine, arginine, glycine, isoleucine, threonine, methionine, and lysine are among the enzymes found in it. Wheatgrass contains the amino acid lysine, which has anti-aging and immune

system-enhancing properties. In general, threonine may promote digestion and metabolic rate. Valerine relaxes the nervous system and stimulates the brain. The regrowth and purification of cells in the kidneys and liver are aided by methionine. In order to boost a man's fertility, arginine helps improve his seminal fluid. Glutamic acid and aspartic acid are two nutrients that the body uses to produce energy and speed up its metabolism. As an effective antioxidant, wheatgrass shows promise in the treatment of a variety of metabolic diseases. One study looked at the antioxidant potential of wheatgrass by encapsulating wheatgrass juice in whey protein and maltodextrin. Powder encapsulation protected and enhanced the plant's phenol level and activity to fight against free radicals, according to an examination of the extracted powder's total phenolic content and antioxidant activity.[27]

According to a rat study, wheatgrass extract directly protected the liver from harm by lowering fatty acid alterations in the hepatic membrane and avoiding lipid peroxidation in the phospholipid bilayer.[28] Research on mice suggests that wheatgrass may protect the liver from acetaminophen's harmful effects by reducing inflammation, oxidative stress, cell death, and liver damage. Mice were administered wheatgrass extract orally one day. For seven days prior to injecting acetaminophen intra-peritoneally, the negative control group was given a saline dosage, while the positive control group was given silymarin. The liver's status was assessed by polymerase chain reaction (PCR), western blotting, and enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA). The livers of the animals treated with wheatgrass extract demonstrated reduced hepatocyte apoptosis and inhibited production of cytochrome P4502E1, an enzyme that causes acetaminophen-induced hepatotoxicity.[29]

There is evidence that the chlorophyll found in wheatgrass, which is present in high concentrations, can improve heart function.[30] By enhancing capillary function and encouraging the formation of lactobacilli, wheatgrass helps reduce blood pressure. In addition, the vasodilatory actions of wheatgrass juice help to widen blood vessels, which in turn allows for better blood flow. In addition, it's a good source of potassium, a mineral that helps cells maintain a healthy balance of fluids and minerals. Potassium is necessary for several vital bodily processes, including keeping blood pressure balanced. The widening of blood vessels is another impact of wheatgrass juice's vasodilatory properties. Overall, this impact improves blood circulation within the veins by enhancing nutrition delivery to endothelial cells and facilitating the effective elimination of metabolic waste products.[31] Wheatgrass can help lower total and triglyceride cholesterol levels while raising HDL (good) cholesterol levels; these are two of the best types of cholesterol. Better cardiovascular health and cholesterol profiles are backed by this impact.[32]

Anaemia

A number of factors, including but not limited to dietary deficits, viral illnesses, and others, can interact in complicated ways to cause anemia. In just a few days after starting to take

chlorophyll derivatives regularly, both the number of red blood cells and the concentration of hemoglobin in the blood significantly increase. Chlorophyll may also have therapeutic use in the treatment of anemia since it promotes the production of new blood cells, especially in animal models of the disease. Anemia patients may find hope in chlorophyll as a treatment option because it raises the hemoglobin index in humans.[33]

Healthy Skin

Both reactive nitrogen species (RNS) and reactive oxygen species (ROS) are metabolic by-products with physiological significance. Oxidative stress occurs when the generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS) and reactive nitrogen species (RNS) is out of sync with the antioxidant defense capacity. A number of disorders, including skin aging, can be accelerated by this condition, which damages lipids, proteins, and DNA, interrupts cell signaling pathways, and changes cytokine release.[34] Research has shown that chlorophyll can stop the spread of bacteria and other germs. If you drink wheatgrass juice on a regular basis, you might be able to stave off skin infections.[35] Wheatgrass also helps the skin regenerate and mend itself because of its abundance of minerals, vitamins, and antioxidants. There are a number of dermatological benefits linked to eating wheatgrass. Additionally, it supposedly aids in warding off the development of under-eye bags. This skin cleanser is well-known for its ability to heal acne and pimples, lessen their appearance, and even diminish the visibility of acne scars.[36] Wheatgrass promotes wound healing by increasing the production of granulation tissue and epithelialization; it has found value in the treatment of a variety of skin diseases, burns, and ulcers.[37]

Anti-Ulcer Activity

Patients suffering from ulcerative colitis find wheatgrass juice to be a highly beneficial treatment agent. As a main or supplementary treatment for active distal ulcerative colitis, it is both effective and safe. Wheatgrass juice's high bioflavonoid concentration is associated with its effectiveness in treating ulcerative colitis. Ointments and aqueous solutions containing chlorophyll have been shown to be useful in treating skin ulcers, according to studies on the use of chlorophyll to stimulate tissue growth.[8]

Effect of Wheatgrass in Chemoprevention

Cancer is a devastating illness that belongs to a group of related but distinct disorders. On a global scale, several cancers are on the rise. A illness with multiple causes is what this is called. For numerous reasons related to the disease's progression, oxidative stress is a cause of cancer and the second biggest cause globally.[38] Chemotherapies have the potential to cure cancer, but they come with harmful side effects and suffering that might worsen a patient's health. Naturally occurring metabolic processes generate free radicals, which in turn cause oxidative stress and, in the long run, a wide range of disorders.[39] In order to play it safe, it is recommended to incorporate antioxidants into one's everyday diet. There may be risks associated with using the different synthetic antioxidants available. In recent years, nutraceuticals derived

from plants have been used for cancer treatment, prevention, and reduction. Herbal treatments and functional diets are supplementary medications for cancer patients with colorectal, prostate, and breast malignancies.[40]

The natural antioxidants found in wheatgrass have been shown to be effective in warding against cancer. Wheatgrass contains enzymes, β-carotene, and several vitamins, all of which work together to neutralize free radicals and offer anti-oxidative benefits. Researchers used fluorescent propidium iodide (PI) staining to determine whether wheatgrass was cytotoxic and whether it induced cell death. Hydrogen peroxide scavenging, hydroxyl radical scavenging, and anti-proliferative activity—which reduced the spread of Hep2 cell lines—were assays that showed the existence of antioxidants. Wheatgrass extract contains nine biologically active components, identified by gas chromatography-mass spectrometry (GC-MS) as possessing hydroxyl groups and double bonds that stabilize free radicals and provide anti-oxidative action.[41] The antioxidant enzymes superoxide dismutase and cytochrome oxidase convert free radical reactive oxygen species into hydrogen peroxide and an oxygen molecule. By undergoing this change, cancer cells are killed.[42] Wheatgrass contains polyphenolics and flavonoids, which have demonstrated their anti-leukemic potential.[43] Additional benefits of fresh wheatgrass juice include its ability to neutralize carcinogens and poisons, lessen chemotherapy-induced myelotoxicity, and control levels of certain pro-inflammatory cytokines such as interleukin-6 (IL-6), interleukin-8 (IL-8), interleukin-10 (IL-10), and interleukin-12 (IL-12). Plant hormones are abundant in wheatgrass. Abscisic acid can counteract the effects of cancer-causing fragments when applied four hours after wheatgrass is cut.[44]

Blood Developer in Thalassemia

It has been found that consuming chlorophyll derivatives can raise the quantities of red blood cells and hemoglobin. Better management of this illness is also helped by the fact that it decreases the total volume of blood transfused. The time between blood transfusions has been found to significantly increase in patients receiving this treatment, extending up to about 25-30 days. This development shows that the treatment's therapeutic benefits have the potential to improve thalassemia care. In thalassemia youngsters receiving continuous blood transfusions, research has demonstrated that taking wheatgrass pills helps keep serum ferritin levels stable and raises HbF levels.[45] Wheatgrass juice therapy was scientifically evaluated in a pilot research by Marwaha *et al.* to assess its effects in patients with transfusion-dependent beta-thalassemia. Half of the participants in the trial had their transfusion needs reduced after drinking wheatgrass juice.[46]

Oral Health

Wheatgrass, which is rich in natural antibiotics and antimicrobials, has shown promise in treating a variety of dental problems. It has the ability to eliminate a wide range of bacteria and viruses that cause cavities, gum disease, periodontal disease, bad breath, yeast infections, cold

sores, and canker sores. As a result, wheatgrass is an excellent tool for keeping teeth and gums healthy. Wheatgrass juice, when added to the diet in moderation, can help cleanse the gums and soothe sore throats when gargled. In addition to easing toothaches and warding off cavities, wheatgrass also helps with the former.[47]

Conclusion:

Foods derived from plants, such as wheatgrass, are frequently incorporated into Indian diets due to the therapeutic benefits they offer. The elimination of lifestyle diseases can be accomplished by the utilization of organic nutraceuticals and traditional foods in order to preserve a healthy lifestyle. For the purpose of maintaining a healthy lifestyle, people all over the world employ herbal plants and food supplements. As a result of its high concentration of various minerals, vitamins, and enzymes, as well as its ability to treat or prevent a wide range of ailments, wheatgrass is widely recognized as a highly effective functional food. There are several medicinal and nutritional benefits associated with wheatgrass. The purpose of this review is to establish a collaborative database of information regarding the various nutritional benefits of wheatgrass. The condition known as cancer is one of the most common causes of death for people all over the world. The effectiveness of wheatgrass as a dietary supplement in the treatment of many forms of cancer has been demonstrated by this research study. Wheatgrass possesses anti-oxidative capability, which has the capacity to halt the life cycle of malignant cells. This has the potential to prevent and treat a variety of cancers, including breast cancer, ovarian cancer, and laryngeal cancer. In light of this, it has been asserted that wheatgrass is a powerful nutraceutical for therapeutic purposes. Through ongoing research and development, it may be possible to further improve its incorporation into contemporary health practices, thereby establishing it as an important component in the provision of holistic health management.

References:

1. Mer A, Vyas K, Patani P. Wheatgrass: a comprehensive review on its therapeutic potential. J Popul Ther Clin Pharmacol. 2024;31(11):1252–60.
2. Minocha N, Sharma N, Pandey P. Wheatgrass: an epitome of nutritional value. Curr Nutr Food Sci. 2022;18:22–30.
3. Adhikary M, Sarkar B, Mukhopadhyay K. Identification of flavonoids of wheatgrass (*Triticum aestivum* L.) at various stages of growth and evaluation of their antioxidant activity [Abstract:]. Can J Biotechnol. 2017;1:159.
4. Fortună ME, Vasilache V, Ignat M, Silion M, Vicol T, Patras X, *et al.* Elemental and macromolecular modifications in *Triticum aestivum* L. plantlets under different cultivation conditions. PLoS One. 2018;13:e0202441.
5. Ogutu FO, Makori SI, Maringa CW, Lemtukei D, Okiko G, Luvita S. Wheat grass: a functional food. Food Sci Qual Manag. 2017;65:33–8.

6. Ahmed M, Saifullah SB, Khatun AA, Ove TA. Effectiveness of solvent extraction on phytochemicals and antioxidant activities from fresh and dried wheatgrass. Eur J Nutr Food Saf. 2021;13:1–10.
7. Anand R, Singh P. The effect of wheat grass juice in type-2 diabetes mellitus. World J Pharm Res. 2020;9:943–56.
8. Mane SS, Pise VG. The health benefits of wheatgrass juice consumption: nutritional and physiochemical properties benefits. EasyChair. 2024;12225.
9. Chowdhury GR, Agarwal S, Sen T, Zaman S, Mitra A. Wheatgrass: a biogem in the health care spectrum. J Sci Eng Health Manag. 2017;1:62–4.
10. Anand R, Singh P. The wheat grass—a literature review. World J Pharm Res. 2023;12:1514–25.
11. Adhikari B, Joshi S. Preparation and quality evaluation of ready to serve (RTS) wheatgrass juice. Dristikon. 2023;13:12–28.
12. Balakrishnan S. Review on: growing a glass of rich immune booster at your home: *Triticum aestivum* L. (wheat grass) beneficial effect on health in this pandemic scenario. Int J Res Appl Sci Biotechnol. 2020;7:141–5.
13. Pannu JS, Kapoor RK. The green blood wheatgrass juice, a health tonic having antibacterial potential. World J Pharm Res. 2015;4:46–54.
14. El-Sahar GE. Effect of wheatgrass (*Triticum aestivum* Linn) extracts as source of antioxidants on some biochemical parameters and markers of aging. Int J Fam Stud Food Sci Nutr Health. 2021;2:46–67.
15. Kulkarni SD, *et al.* Evaluation of the antioxidant activity of wheatgrass (*Triticum aestivum* L.) as a function of growth under different conditions. Phytother Res. 2006;20:218–27.
16. Eissa HA, Mohamed SS, Hussein AM. Nutritional value and impact of wheatgrass juice (Green Blood Therapy) on increasing fertility in male albino rats. Bull Natl Res Cent. 2020;44:1–11.
17. Nigam V. Pharmacognostic, phytochemical investigation & pharmacological study of young leaves of *Triticum aestivum* Linn. Int J Pharm Sci. 2019;5:16–9.
18. Murthy SR. Therapeutic role of wheatgrass (*Triticum aestivum* Linn.) in iron deficiency anaemia. Int J Pharmacogn Life Sci. 2020;1:1–4.
19. Ashok SA. Phytochemical and pharmacological screening of wheatgrass juice (*Triticum aestivum* L.). Int J Pharm Sci Rev Res. 2011;9:159–64.
20. Minocha N, Saini S, Pandey P. Nutritional prospects of wheatgrass (*Triticum aestivum*) and its effects in treatment and chemoprevention. Explor Med. 2022;3:432–42.
21. Ghumman A, Singh N, Kaur A. Chemical, nutritional and phenolic composition of wheatgrass and pulse shoots. Int J Food Sci Technol. 2017;52:2191–200.

22. Thakur N, Dhaliwal HS, Sharma V. Chemical composition, minerals and vitamins analysis of lyophilized wheatgrass juice powder. Int J Emerg Technol. 2019;10:137–44.
23. Fardet A. New hypotheses for the health-protective mechanisms of whole-grain cereals: what is beyond fibre? Nutr Res Rev. 2010;23:65–134.
24. de Wit N, Esser D, Siebelink E, Fischer A, Sieg J, Mes J. Extrinsic wheat fibre consumption enhances faecal bulk and stool frequency: a randomized controlled trial. Food Funct. 2019;10:646–51.
25. Pryce JE, Parker Gaddis KL, Koeck A, Bastin C, Abdelsayed M, Gengler N, *et al.* Invited review: opportunities for genetic improvement of metabolic diseases. J Dairy Sci. 2016;99:6855–73.
26. Dinu M, Whittaker A, Pagliai G, Benedettelli S, Sofi F. Ancient wheat species and human health: biochemical and clinical implications. J Nutr Biochem. 2018;52:1–9.
27. Akbas E, Kilercioglu M, Onder ON, Koker A, Soyler B, Oztop MH. Wheatgrass juice to wheat grass powder: encapsulation, physical and chemical characterization. J Funct Foods. 2017;28:19–27.
28. Durairaj V, Shakya G, Pajaniradje S, Rajagopalan R. Effect of wheatgrass on membrane fatty acid composition during hepatotoxicity induced by alcohol and heated PUFA. J Membr Biol. 2014;247:515–21.
29. Lim JY, Yun DH, Lee JH, Kwon YB, Lee YM, Lee DH, *et al.* Extract of *Triticum aestivum* sprouts suppresses acetaminophen-induced hepatotoxicity in mice by inhibiting oxidative stress. Molecules. 2021;26:6336.
30. Awulachew MT. The role of wheat in human nutrition and its medicinal value. Glob Acad J Med Sci. 2020;2:50–4.
31. Karadahin M, Argon ZU. Green blood: wheatgrass juice. Int Congr Med Aromat Plants Proc. 2017;513–27.
32. Choudhary SH, Kaurav HE, Chaudhary GI. Wheatgrass (*Triticum aestivum* Linn.): a potential substitute of human blood in traditional system of medicine. Asian J Pharm Clin Res. 2021;14:43–7.
33. Runjala S, Murthy YL. Study on the effect of wheat grass biscuits on blood haemoglobin level for the treatment of iron deficiency anemia in adolescent girls at welfare hostel in Vizainagaram district, Andhra Pradesh, India. Think India J. 2019;22:57–61.
34. Costa EF, Magalhaes WV, Di Stasi LC. Recent advances in herbal-derived products with skin anti-aging properties and cosmetic applications. Molecules. 2022;27:7518.
35. Hassan N, Siddique MS. Wheat grass (*Triticum aestivum* L.) benefits health in a pandemic scenario. J Res Appl Sci Biotechnol. 2022;1:24–39.
36. Mathur S, Mathur R, Kohli GK. Therapeutic use of wheat grass juice for the treatment of anemia in young women of Ajmer city (Rajasthan, India). Int J Nutr Sci. 2017;2:10–4.

37. Chauhan M. A pilot study on wheat grass juice for its phytochemical, nutritional and therapeutic potential on chronic diseases. Int J Chem Stud. 2014;2:27–34.
38. Shakya G, Balasubramanian S, Rajagopalan R. Methanol extract of wheatgrass induces G1 cell cycle arrest in a p53-dependent manner and downregulates the expression of cyclin D1 in human laryngeal cancer cells—an in vitro and in silico approach. Pharmacogn Mag. 2015;11:S139–47.
39. Loizzo MR, Said A, Tundis R, Hawas UW, Rashed K, Menichini F, *et al.* Antioxidant and antiproliferative activity of Diospyros lotus L. extract and isolated compounds. Plant Foods Hum Nutr. 2009;64:264–70.
40. Clement YN, Mahase V, Jagroop A, Kissoon K, Maharaj A, Mathura P, *et al.* Herbal remedies and functional foods used by cancer patients attending specialty oncology clinics in Trinidad. BMC Complement Altern Med. 2016;16:399.
41. Shakya G, Pajaniradje S, Hoda M, Durairaj V, Rajagopalan R. GC-MS analysis, in vitro antioxidant and cytotoxic studies of wheatgrass extract. Am J Phytomed Clin Ther. 2014;2:877–93.
42. Bawa K, Brar JK, Singh A, Gupta A, Kaur H, Bains K. Wheatgrass powder-enriched functional pasta: techno-functional, phytochemical, textural, sensory, and structural characterization. J Texture Stud. 2022;53:517–30.
43. Wheatgrass juice [Internet]. Rockville: National Cancer Institute; [cited 2022 May 31]. Available from: https://www.cancer.gov/publications/dictionaries/cancer-drug/def/wheatgrass-juice
44. Livingston VWC, inventor; Majnarich JJ, assignee. Abscisic acid tablets and process. United States patent US 3958025A. 1976 May 18.
45. Desai TR, Solanki JK, Buch P, Goyal RK. *Triticum aestivum* (Wheatgrass) formulation: an alternate treatment for the patients with thalassemia. Orient Pharm Exp Med. 2008;7:466–76.
46. Marwaha RK, Bansal D, Kaur S, Trehan A. Wheat grass juice reduces transfusion requirement in patients with thalassemia major: a pilot study. Indian Pediatr. 2004;41:716–20.
47. Sareen M, Baghla P, Dhaka P, Mathur E, Sobti P, Khajuria S. Wheat grass—a wonder herb. Syst Rev Pharm. 2014;5:4–5.

NANOPARTICLE-MEDIATED IMMUNOSENSORS: A NEW FRONTIER IN DISEASE DETECTION

Chitrali Talele[1], Dipali Talele*[2], Niyati Shah[1], Mamta Kumari[1]

[1]Department of Pharmacy,

Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara, Gujarat, India 391760

[2]School of Pharmacy,

Vishwakarma University, Survey No 2,3,4 Laxmi Nagar, Kondhwa, Budruk, Pune 411048.

*Corresponding author E-mail: dipalitalele93@gmail.com

Abstract:

The field of immunosensing is experiencing a transformative shift driven by advances in nanomaterials. Nanoparticles, particularly gold nanoparticles (AuNPs) and quantum dots (QDs), offer unique optical, electrical, and electrochemical properties that enable highly sensitive and selective immunoassays. This review highlights how nanoparticle-based platforms are enhancing conventional optical (colorimetric, fluorescence, surface plasmon resonance) and electrical (direct and indirect electrochemical) detection methods. Innovations also extend to electromechanical systems, nanoparticle-modified electrotransducers, and emerging lab-on-a-chip and lateral flow immunoassays. These nanoparticle-enhanced systems offer potential for multiplexed, rapid, and miniaturized diagnostic devices. Continued convergence of materials science and biotechnology is poised to usher in next-generation nanoimmunosensors, contributing significantly to clinical diagnostics, food safety, and environmental monitoring.

Keywords: Nanoparticles**,** Immunosensing**,** Biosensors**,** Gold Nanoparticles, Quantum Dots

1. Introduction:

Immunosensing Using Nanoparticles

Recent developments in nanotechnology, particularly the emergence of novel nanomaterials such as nanoparticles (NPs) and quantum dots (QDs), have dramatically influenced a wide range of industries including electronics, environmental monitoring, and biomedical engineering. Nanoparticles, typically defined as having a size less than 100 nanometers, possess unique physical, optical, and chemical properties that are not observed in their bulk counterparts [1]. For instance, gold nanoparticles (AuNPs) show strong light absorption across the ultraviolet-visible to near-infrared (UV-Vis-NIR) spectrum, a feature absent in bulk gold, while quantum dots exhibit size-dependent emission properties, allowing precise tuning of their fluorescence based on particle size. These extraordinary properties have positioned nanoparticles at the forefront of biosensing innovations, especially in immunosensing where detecting biomolecules such as proteins, antibodies, and antigens with high sensitivity and specificity is crucial. In immunosensing platforms, nanoparticles fulfill multiple roles by serving

as labeling agents to amplify detection signals, acting as enhancers of transducer surfaces to improve signal strength, or functioning directly as sensing components. Their superior optical tunability, high surface area to volume ratio, excellent electrical conductance, and catalytic activities make them invaluable tools for significantly improving the sensitivity, speed, and practicality of biosensing systems compared to traditional methods. The incorporation of nanoparticles has led to the development of advanced immunoassays, including colorimetric, fluorescence-based, electrochemical, and surface plasmon resonance techniques, which are capable of detecting minute concentrations of analytes with greater efficiency and reliability [2].

As a result, nanoparticle-assisted immunosensing systems are finding applications across several fields including clinical diagnostics, food safety, environmental surveillance, and public security. This interdisciplinary fusion of nanomaterials with biosensing technologies has given rise to a new research domain known as nanoimmunosensing, bridging the expertise of materials science, nanotechnology, molecular biology, and analytical chemistry to engineer the next generation of highly sensitive and practical biosensors.

2. Antibodies, Modifications with Nanoparticles and Immunosensing

Antibodies play a fundamental role in immunosensing technologies due to their exceptional ability to recognize and bind specific target molecules with high affinity and selectivity. Among various classes of antibodies, Immunoglobulin G (IgG) is the most commonly utilized in immunoassay systems. The structure of IgG, elucidated through X-ray crystallography, reveals a Y-shaped architecture comprising two identical heavy chains and two identical light chains linked by disulfide bonds. Each arm of the Y-shaped structure contains an antigen-binding site formed by the variable regions of the heavy and light chains, which specifically interact with distinct epitopes on target antigens. The constant regions determine the antibody class and contribute to the overall structural stability.

To integrate antibodies with nanoparticles for immunosensing applications, chemical modification and bioconjugation strategies are essential. These modifications are carefully designed to preserve the biological activity of the antibody, especially its antigen-binding capability. The functionalization processes typically target reactive groups naturally present on the antibody surface, including amino groups (-NH_2), carboxyl groups (-COOH), and sulfhydryl groups (-SH). Various chemical approaches have been developed depending on which functional group is targeted [3].

For instance, nanoparticles coated with mono-sulfo-NHS esters can react with the free amino groups of lysine residues on the antibody surface, forming stable amide bonds. This strategy is widely used because it allows efficient coupling under mild conditions while maintaining the structural integrity of the antibody. Alternatively, the thiol groups resulting from the reduction of interchain disulfide bonds in the antibody can be exploited for conjugation with

nanoparticles functionalized with maleimide groups. This method offers a site-directed conjugation approach, minimizing interference with the antigen-binding site and preserving immunoactivity. Another strategy involves the activation of carboxyl groups on the antibody using carbodiimide chemistry, often employing agents like EDC (1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl) carbodiimide), followed by coupling to amino-functionalized nanoparticles. This method ensures that the nanoparticles are covalently linked to regions of the antibody distant from the antigen-binding domains [4].

Electron microscopy techniques, particularly transmission electron microscopy (TEM), provide visual confirmation of successful conjugation. In TEM images, nanoparticle-antibody conjugates are often surrounded by a distinct halo, representing the protein coating around the metallic core, thus verifying the presence of antibody layers. The conjugation of antibodies to nanoparticles significantly enhances the performance of immunosensing systems. Nanoparticle labels enable signal amplification due to their intrinsic optical, electrical, or catalytic properties. In optical assays, the plasmonic properties of gold nanoparticles or the fluorescence of quantum dots contribute to increased sensitivity and allow for multiplexed detection. In electrochemical assays, nanoparticles act as electroactive tags or catalytically active centers, facilitating signal generation at low analyte concentrations.

Furthermore, the orientation and density of antibodies immobilized on the nanoparticle surface are critical factors influencing the efficiency of the resulting immunoassays. Oriented immobilization, where the antigen-binding sites are exposed and accessible, leads to higher sensitivity compared to random immobilization. Recent advancements focus on optimizing these parameters to achieve superior assay performance [5].

3. Colorimetric Detection

Colorimetric detection represents one of the most straightforward and visually intuitive techniques in nanoparticle-based immunosensing. It exploits the unique optical properties of nanoparticles, particularly gold nanoparticles (AuNPs), which exhibit strong surface plasmon resonance effects that result in intense colors visible to the naked eye. This phenomenon arises because gold nanoparticles possess a high extinction coefficient and their optical properties are highly sensitive to changes in their local environment, such as aggregation or surface binding events.

In a typical colorimetric immunoassay, gold nanoparticles are functionalized with antibodies specific to the target analyte. In the presence of the analyte, binding events between the nanoparticle-conjugated antibodies and the target antigen leads to particle aggregation. This aggregation alters the interparticle distance, causing a dramatic shift in the plasmon resonance band. As a consequence, the solution color changes from red to purple or blue, depending on the

extent of aggregation. This visual color change serves as a direct indication of the presence and concentration of the target analyte.

The fundamental basis of colorimetric detection lies in the distance-dependent optical properties of nanoparticles. When nanoparticles are well-dispersed, they absorb and scatter light at specific wavelengths, resulting in a red color for gold nanoparticles of typical size. Upon aggregation, plasmon coupling between adjacent nanoparticles occurs, leading to a red shift in the absorption spectrum and a color change. This optical shift can be measured quantitatively using UV-Visible spectroscopy, allowing for sensitive detection beyond visual observation. Several formats of colorimetric assays have been developed to exploit these properties. One commonly used approach is based on controlled aggregation, where the presence of the analyte promotes the cross-linking of antibody-coated nanoparticles. Another strategy involves controlled disaggregation, where analyte binding disrupts preformed nanoparticle aggregates, resulting in a reverse color change. These designs provide flexibility in assay construction depending on the application and the nature of the target biomolecule [6].

Colorimetric nanoparticle-based immunoassays have achieved remarkable sensitivities. For instance, using gold nanoparticle aggregation assays, it has been possible to detect disease biomarkers such as Alzheimer's tau protein at levels as low as one picogram per milliliter. Other important examples include the detection of thrombin, rabbit immunoglobulin G (IgG), and cholera toxin using similar colorimetric platforms, each showcasing the versatility and effectiveness of the method. In addition to direct aggregation-based methods, nanoparticles can be utilized as carriers of enzymatic labels. In this format, nanoparticles conjugated with antibodies are further labeled with enzymes such as horseradish peroxidase (HRP). Upon analyte recognition and binding, the enzymatic reaction leads to the generation of a colorimetric product, further amplifying the detection signal. This strategy combines the advantages of both nanoparticle-based signal amplification and traditional enzymatic colorimetric readouts, pushing the sensitivity limits even further [7].

Moreover, while gold nanoparticles have been predominantly used, other metallic nanoparticles such as silver nanoparticles (AgNPs) have also been explored for colorimetric immunosensing, although to a lesser extent. The use of different types of nanoparticles expands the range of optical responses and may offer additional advantages in specific assay designs.

Despite its apparent simplicity, colorimetric detection based on nanoparticles has evolved into a highly sensitive and reliable technique suitable for rapid and cost-effective point-of-care diagnostics. The ability to visually detect changes without the need for sophisticated instrumentation makes colorimetric assays particularly attractive for applications in resource-limited settings [8]. Furthermore, recent innovations integrating colorimetric assays with microfluidic platforms and smartphone-based readers are pushing the boundaries of portable and

accessible diagnostics even further. Thus, colorimetric immunosensing using nanoparticles not only represents a foundation of nanoparticle-enhanced biosensing but also continues to drive innovations toward practical, user-friendly, and highly sensitive diagnostic solutions [9].

4. Fluorescence Detection

Fluorescence detection represents a powerful and highly sensitive approach in nanoparticle-based immunosensing, capitalizing on the extraordinary photophysical properties of semiconductor nanocrystals known as quantum dots (QDs). Quantum dots are nanoscale particles typically composed of semiconductor materials such as cadmium telluride (CdTe), cadmium selenide (CdSe), or zinc oxide (ZnO), often coated with protective shells like zinc sulfide (ZnS) to enhance their stability and fluorescence efficiency [10]. Due to their quantum confinement effects, quantum dots exhibit size-tunable emission wavelengths, high quantum yields, exceptional photostability, and broad excitation spectra combined with narrow, symmetric emission peaks. These features make them superior fluorescent labels compared to traditional organic dyes in immunosensing applications. In fluorescence-based immunosensing, nanoparticles are functionalized with antibodies that are specific to the target analyte. Upon binding to the analyte, changes in fluorescence intensity, lifetime, or resonance energy transfer can be monitored, providing a highly sensitive readout. In a typical system, different populations of quantum dots can be conjugated with antibodies against different targets, allowing simultaneous multiplexed detection. Due to the broad excitation and distinct emission profiles of quantum dots, multiple biomarkers can be detected in a single assay using a common excitation source but distinguishing based on emission wavelengths [11].

Several strategies have been developed for fluorescence-based immunosensing using nanoparticles. Direct labeling involves the conjugation of quantum dots to antibodies, resulting in a fluorescent signal directly proportional to the amount of target antigen captured. This approach is exemplified by the simultaneous detection of angiopoietin-2 and mouse IgG, where different colored quantum dots were used to label different antibodies, enabling straightforward multiplexing in a single microfluidic flow system.

An alternative strategy involves the use of core-shell nanoparticles composed of an inert core such as silica or polystyrene and a shell impregnated with fluorescent dyes, particularly lanthanide chelates such as europium (III). These core-shell structures offer improved stability, enhanced fluorescence lifetimes, and resistance to photobleaching. Such nanoparticles have been employed successfully for the sensitive detection of clinically relevant biomarkers including prostate-specific antigen, human hepatitis B surface antigen, and interleukin-6 [12]. Moreover, advanced fluorescence immunosensing approaches have explored the use of nanoparticle polymer conjugates based on charge-complementary interactions. For instance, gold nanoparticles can be complexed with fluorescent polymers whose emission is quenched when

attached to the nanoparticle surface. Upon interaction with target proteins, displacement of the polymers occurs, resulting in restoration of fluorescence. This method allows the creation of fluorescence "fingerprints" unique to each protein analyte, enabling pattern-based identification. Fluorescence immunosensing systems based on nanoparticles have achieved remarkable sensitivities, with detection limits reaching picomolar or even femtomolar concentrations of target biomolecules. The superior brightness and photostability of quantum dots facilitate prolonged observation periods, repeated scanning, and real-time tracking, which are essential features for both laboratory research and clinical diagnostic applications [13]. However, it is important to note that despite their advantages, certain quantum dots composed of heavy metals such as cadmium raise biocompatibility and toxicity concerns, particularly for in vivo applications. Therefore, significant research efforts are focused on developing cadmium-free quantum dots and alternative fluorescent nanoparticles such as carbon dots, silicon quantum dots, and graphene quantum dots, which offer lower toxicity profiles while maintaining desirable fluorescence properties.

Recent technological trends also emphasize the integration of fluorescence detection with portable systems, such as microfluidic devices and smartphone-based fluorescence readers, to facilitate point-of-care diagnostics. The combination of quantum dot labeling with microfluidic platforms has enabled highly sensitive and multiplexed detection with reduced sample volumes and assay times, significantly advancing the practical utility of fluorescence immunosensing [14].

5. Surface Plasmon Resonance-Based Detection

Surface Plasmon Resonance (SPR) is an advanced optical technique used to detect molecular interactions in real-time without the need for labelling [15]. It works on the principle that when polarized light is directed at a metal surface (often gold or silver), surface plasmons coherent oscillations of free electrons are excited. This occurs at a specific angle of light, and when molecules (like proteins or DNA) bind to the surface, they alter the local refractive index at the interface. SPR measures this shift in resonance angle, which is proportional to the amount of binding that occurs. Since SPR detects changes in the refractive index, it provides label-free, real-time monitoring of interactions, making it widely used in biosensing applications such as detecting antibodies, antigens, and other biomolecular interactions. It’s particularly valuable in studying kinetics of binding interactions, such as association and dissociation rates [16].

6. Direct Electrical Detection

Direct electrical detection is based on measuring electrical properties like conductivity, resistance, or potential changes that occur due to interactions at the electrode or sensor surface. In this method, the binding of the analyte (such as a biomolecule) to the sensor’s surface directly changes the electrochemical characteristics of the system [17]. For example, when a molecule

like DNA hybridizes with a complementary strand on the sensor surface, it may cause a change in the resistance or current flowing through the system. This change is measured by an external device, providing a direct readout of the interaction. Direct electrical detection offers high sensitivity, as it directly correlates the binding event to a quantifiable electrical signal. It is particularly useful in the detection of biomolecular interactions for applications such as medical diagnostics, environmental monitoring, and food safety testing.

7. Indirect Electrical Detection

Indirect electrical detection involves measuring secondary changes in electrical properties that are triggered by the analyte's interaction with the sensor [18]. Rather than directly measuring the binding event, indirect methods rely on secondary reactions that generate a measurable electrical signal. For example, an enzymatic reaction may occur upon binding of the target molecule, which leads to a change in pH or ion concentration, thus altering the conductivity of the solution. The electrical signal generated from these secondary changes is then recorded and analyzed. Indirect detection methods are often used when direct electrical changes are difficult to measure, either because the analyte interaction is weak or because direct changes are too small to detect. While indirect methods might introduce additional complexity and could be slower than direct detection, they are still widely used in practical applications where the target molecule is difficult to detect directly [19].

8. Electromechanical Detection: Quartz Crystal Microbalances and Microcantilevers

Electromechanical sensors, such as Quartz Crystal Microbalances (QCMs) and microcantilevers, rely on the principle that a change in mass on the sensor surface causes mechanical oscillations. In QCMs, a thin quartz crystal is oscillated at a particular resonant frequency. When molecules bind to the surface, their added mass shifts the resonant frequency, which can be precisely measured. This change in frequency is directly related to the mass of the analyte bound to the surface, providing a highly sensitive method for detecting molecular interactions. Similarly, microcantilevers, which are tiny beams or structures, bend or deflect when mass is added to their surface, and this deflection is measured. These electromechanical methods are particularly sensitive to small mass changes and can be used to detect low concentrations of analytes, making them useful in areas like protein interaction studies, DNA sensing, and environmental monitoring. These sensors offer the advantage of real-time monitoring and can operate in complex environments, such as solutions, without the need for labeling.

9. Nanoparticles as Modifiers of Electrotransducing Surfaces

Nanoparticles have emerged as powerful modifiers of electrochemical sensors due to their unique properties, such as a high surface area-to-volume ratio, catalytic activity, and ease of functionalization. When integrated into electrotransducing surfaces (like electrodes or sensor

surfaces), nanoparticles can significantly enhance the sensitivity and performance of biosensors. For instance, gold, silver, or carbon-based nanoparticles can increase the surface area available for molecular binding, leading to more efficient detection. Additionally, nanoparticles can act as catalysts, promoting faster electron transfer, which enhances the overall signal. By attaching functional groups to the nanoparticles' surface, they can be engineered to specifically bind with certain biomolecules, improving selectivity. This makes nanoparticle-modified electrotransducing surfaces useful for detecting low-concentration analytes in complex samples. Furthermore, nanoparticles can be used to amplify signals, thus enabling highly sensitive detection even for analytes that are typically difficult to detect [20].

10. New Trends: Lateral Flow and Lab-On-A-Chip Systems

Lateral flow assays and Lab-on-a-Chip (LOC) systems are rapidly gaining traction in the field of biosensing due to their portability, ease of use, and ability to perform rapid diagnostics. Lateral flow assays (often referred to as lateral flow immunoassays or LFAs) are commonly used in point-of-care diagnostics, such as pregnancy tests or COVID-19 rapid tests. In lateral flow devices, a sample (typically a liquid) is applied at one end of a test strip. Capillary action transports the sample through the strip, where it encounters immobilized reagents (such as antibodies or antigens). The target analyte binds to these reagents, and a visible signal (e.g., a color change) indicates the presence of the target. These tests are inexpensive, easy to use, and provide quick results without the need for specialized equipment [21].

Lab-on-a-Chip systems, on the other hand, integrate multiple laboratory functions into a single, compact chip, which can perform tasks like sample preparation, mixing, heating, and detection. LOC devices are often microfluidic, allowing for the manipulation of tiny volumes of fluids in a highly controlled manner. LOC systems are highly versatile and can be used for a wide range of applications, including DNA analysis, cell sorting, and drug testing. The integration of sensors, fluid handling, and detection on a single chip makes these systems ideal for portable, high-throughput diagnostics, and they are poised to revolutionize the field of medical diagnostics and environmental monitoring [22].

Conclusions and Outlook:

In conclusion, the field of biosensing is evolving rapidly with the advent of new technologies that offer improved sensitivity, speed, and portability. Techniques such as Surface Plasmon Resonance, direct and indirect electrical detection, and electromechanical methods like Quartz Crystal Microbalances and microcantilevers are providing researchers with powerful tools to detect biomolecular interactions in real-time. The incorporation of nanoparticles to modify electrotransducing surfaces is enhancing the performance of electrochemical sensors, making them more efficient and sensitive. Additionally, the integration of lateral flow assays and lab-on-a-chip systems is pushing the boundaries of what is possible in portable, point-of-care

diagnostics. As these technologies continue to develop, the future of biosensing holds great promise, particularly in the fields of personalized medicine, environmental monitoring, and rapid diagnostics. These innovations will likely lead to smaller, cheaper, and more accessible diagnostic devices, transforming the landscape of medical and environmental testing.

References:

1. Rosi N, Mirkin CA. Nanostructures in biodetection. Chem Rev. 2005;105(4):1547-1562.
2. Wang J, Lin Y. Nanomaterial-based electrochemical biosensors. Electroanalysis. 2006;18(1):7-13.
3. Zhou Z, Zhang X. Nanoparticle-based immunosensors for detection of cancer biomarkers. Biosensors. 2015;5(2):70-87.
4. Huang X, El-Sayed IH, El-Sayed MA. Gold nanoparticles: Interesting optical properties and recent applications in cancer diagnostics and therapy. Nanomedicine (Lond). 2006;2(5):681-693.
5. Gupta AK, Silverman JA. Chemical and physical properties of nanoparticles and their applications in immunosensing. J Nanoscience Nanotechnol. 2011;11(12):1000-1012.
6. Baker LA, Anderson D. Immunosensing: Nanoparticles for biosensor applications. Nanomedicine (Lond). 2012;8(2):101-109.
7. Zhang M, Zhang H. Nanoparticles and their applications in immunoassays. J Nanobiotechnol. 2015;13:39.
8. Liu X, Wang H. Nanoparticles for immunosensing and diagnostics. Mater Sci Eng C. 2017;70:88-98.
9. Adurodija O, Lu Y. Recent developments in nanoparticle-based immunosensors: A review. Nanomaterials. 2021;11(9):2136.
10. He X, Li H. Nanoparticles in immunosensors: Applications, challenges, and future directions. Trends Anal Chem. 2013;46:10-17.
11. Tian Z, Xu Y. Nanoparticle-enhanced immunosensors: Design and development. Anal Chem. 2014;86(18):9025-9031.
12. Zhou M, Zhang X. Nanomaterials in immunosensors: Recent advances and future trends. Sens Actuators B Chem. 2018;255:1207-1220.
13. Wang S, Chen X. Nanoparticle-based biosensors for immunosensing and disease diagnosis. Biosens Bioelectron. 2021;169:112544.
14. Sun L, Wang Y. Nano-immunosensors: Principles and applications. TrAC Trends Anal Chem. 2016;84:61-73.
15. Shi Y, Liu H. Gold nanoparticles in immunosensing: The role of size and functionalization. Nanomedicine (Lond). 2019;22:15-25.

16. Li Z, Li W. Nanoparticle-based immunosensors: From development to applications. Sens Actuators B Chem. 2020;314:128046.
17. Paleček E, Kovářová J. Nanoparticle-based electrochemical immunosensors. Anal Chim Acta. 2014;823:1-14.
18. Sundararajan V, Natarajan M. Nanoparticles in immunosensing: Current trends and future prospects. Int J Nanomedicine. 2017;12:2977-2992.
19. Mikolajczak P, Smulders J. Nanoparticles in immunosensor technology: The role of functionalization in enhancing performance. Sensors. 2019;19(12):3060.
20. Zhou Y, Zheng X. Nanoparticle-based immunosensors for clinical diagnostics. J Nanoscience Nanotechnol. 2018;18(5):2875-2889.
21. Sung HW, Hsieh MF. Nanomaterial-based sensors for immunosensing applications. J Mater Chem B. 2014;2(17):2527-2535.
22. López MA, García JF. Nanoparticles as labels in immunoassays: Recent developments. Trends Anal Chem. 2015;67:49-59.

Bhumi Publishing, India
June 2025

THE GUT MICROBIOME AS A CENTRAL PLAYER IN ENDOCRINE-METABOLIC DISORDERS

Dilsar Gohil*, Rajesh Maheshwari
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara, Gujarat, India. 391760
*Corresponding author E-mail: gohildilsar9624@gmail.com

Abstract:

The human microbiome has emerged as a pivotal regulator of host metabolic and endocrine functions. This chapter elucidates the multifaceted mechanisms by which the gut microbiota influences endocrine and metabolic disorders such as diabetes, obesity, metabolic syndrome, and polycystic ovarian syndrome (PCOS). The microbiota exerts its effects via metabolites such as short-chain fatty acids (SCFAs), bile acids, and microbial-derived hormones, which modulate host immunity, inflammation, and endocrine signaling. It also influences intestinal barrier function and systemic low-grade inflammation, which are central to the pathophysiology of insulin resistance and obesity. The gut-brain axis and gut-liver axis represent key communication pathways in this interplay, mediated through neural, immune, and endocrine mechanisms. Dysbiosis, or microbial imbalance, exacerbates endocrine dysfunctions and perpetuates metabolic derangements. The chapter highlights experimental and clinical evidence linking microbial signatures with disease phenotypes, emphasizing microbiome-targeted therapeutic strategies such as probiotics, prebiotics, synbiotics, and fecal microbiota transplantation. Understanding these intricate microbiota-host interactions opens new avenues for personalized medicine and metabolic disease management.

Keywords: Microbiome, Endocrine Disorders, Metabolic Syndrome, Gut-Brain Axis, Short-Chain Fatty Acids, Dysbiosis, Inflammation, Probiotics, Insulin Resistance

Introduction:

The human gastrointestinal tract harbors trillions of microorganisms, collectively referred to as the gut microbiome, which has emerged as a crucial regulator of host physiology. Once considered a passive component of digestion, the microbiome is now recognized for its profound impact on metabolic, immune, and endocrine functions. In recent years, compelling evidence has established a strong connection between alterations in gut microbiota termed dysbiosis and the development of endocrine and metabolic disorders such as obesity, type 2 diabetes mellitus, metabolic syndrome, and polycystic ovarian syndrome (PCOS) [1].

Microbiota-derived metabolites such as short-chain fatty acids (SCFAs), bile acids, and tryptophan derivatives interact with host receptors and signalling pathways, influencing energy balance, glucose metabolism, insulin sensitivity, and hormone secretion. Additionally, microbial modulation of gut barrier integrity and systemic inflammation contributes significantly to

metabolic dysregulation. The gut-brain and gut-liver axes represent vital communication networks through which the microbiome exerts systemic endocrine effects [2].

This chapter explores the mechanistic underpinnings of microbiome-host interactions in the context of metabolic and endocrine disorders. It delves into how specific microbial taxa and their metabolites influence hormonal regulation, immune signalling, and metabolic outcomes. By understanding these complex interactions, we can better appreciate the potential of microbiome-targeted interventions including probiotics, prebiotics, dietary modifications, and fecal microbiota transplantation in managing and potentially reversing endocrine-metabolic dysfunctions [3].

Key Mechanisms of Microbiome-Drug Interactions

The gut microbiome, composed of trillions of microorganisms, exerts a profound impact on human health and disease. Among its emerging roles, one of the most significant is its influence on pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics. Collectively known as microbiome-drug interactions, these effects are reshaping how scientists and clinicians approach personalized medicine and drug therapy. Three primary mechanisms underlie these interactions: biotransformation of drugs, modulation of host drug metabolism, and altered drug absorption. Understanding these processes is critical to optimizing therapeutic efficacy and minimizing adverse drug reactions [4].

1. Biotransformation of Drugs by Gut Microbes

One of the most direct and well-documented mechanisms of microbiome-drug interaction is biotransformation the chemical alteration of drugs by microbial enzymes. Unlike hepatic metabolism, microbial metabolism often occurs before drugs enter systemic circulation, particularly for oral drugs. Gut microbes express a wide range of metabolic enzymes that can activate, inactivate, or even toxify pharmaceutical compounds.

a. Inactivation of Drugs

A classic example is the inactivation of digoxin, a cardiac glycoside used to treat heart failure and arrhythmias. Certain strains of *Eggerthella lenta*, a gut bacterium, can reduce digoxin to inactive dihydrodigoxin. This transformation is strain-specific and depends on the presence of the cgr operon (cardiac glycoside reductase). Individuals harboring high levels of these strains may experience reduced therapeutic efficacy of digoxin, highlighting the importance of microbial profiling in clinical pharmacology [5].

b. Reactivation of Drug Metabolites

In some cases, gut microbes can reactivate drugs that have been detoxified and excreted by the host liver. This is particularly problematic for drugs undergoing glucuronidation, a phase II hepatic detoxification process. A well-known example is irinotecan, a chemotherapy drug. Once processed in the liver, irinotecan is excreted into the intestine as a glucuronidated metabolite (SN-38G). However, β-glucuronidase-producing bacteria (e.g., *Bacteroides*,

Clostridium) in the gut can cleave the glucuronide moiety, reactivating SN-38. The reactivated drug is highly toxic to the intestinal lining, causing severe diarrhea, a common and limiting side effect of irinotecan therapy [6].

c. Activation of Prodrugs

Conversely, some drugs require microbial action for activation. For instance, sulfasalazine, used to treat inflammatory bowel disease, is inactive in its parent form and becomes pharmacologically active only after cleavage by azoreductase enzymes produced by colonic bacteria, releasing 5-aminosalicylic acid (5-ASA), the active anti-inflammatory agent.

This microbial involvement in drug metabolism underscores the necessity to consider inter-individual variability in microbiota composition when prescribing certain drugs, especially those with narrow therapeutic windows [7].

2. Modulation of Host Drug Metabolism

Beyond directly altering drug structures, the gut microbiome can influence the host's own drug-metabolizing systems, especially hepatic enzymes. This indirect modulation is largely mediated by microbiota-derived metabolites, such as short-chain fatty acids (SCFAs), secondary bile acids, and tryptophan catabolites, which act as signaling molecules affecting gene expression and enzyme activity in the liver.

a. Influence on Cytochrome P450 Enzymes

Cytochrome P450 (CYP) enzymes play a central role in drug metabolism. Emerging evidence suggests that microbial metabolites can upregulate or downregulate the expression of various CYP isoenzymes. For example, butyrate, an SCFA produced during the fermentation of dietary fibers, has been shown to influence CYP3A4 expression, a key enzyme responsible for the metabolism of nearly 50% of drugs.

Additionally, lipopolysaccharides (LPS) from Gram-negative bacteria can activate inflammatory pathways (e.g., via Toll-like receptor 4), which in turn suppress CYP expression, potentially leading to increased plasma concentrations and toxicity of drugs that rely on hepatic clearance [8].

b. Epigenetic and Nuclear Receptor Modulation

Microbial metabolites also interact with nuclear receptors such as pregnane X receptor (PXR) and aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AhR), both of which regulate the expression of drug-metabolizing enzymes and transporters. These interactions highlight the role of the microbiome in orchestrating a host-microbial dialogue that shapes drug metabolism beyond the gut [9].

3. Altered Drug Absorption

The bioavailability of orally administered drugs can be significantly influenced by microbial activity that alters the physiochemical environment of the gut, such as pH, mucus layer integrity, and intestinal barrier function.

a. Modulation of Gut Permeability

Some gut bacteria produce metabolites that tighten or loosen tight junctions in the intestinal epithelium. For example, zonulin, a protein involved in intestinal permeability, can be upregulated by certain bacteria, leading to a "leaky gut" phenotype. Altered permeability can result in enhanced or reduced drug absorption, which in turn affects systemic drug levels [10].

b. Changes in Luminal pH and Bile Acids

The pH of the gastrointestinal tract, which influences drug solubility and absorption, can be modulated by microbial fermentation. SCFAs like acetate and propionate lower gut pH, potentially enhancing the solubility of weakly basic drugs while impairing that of weak acids.

Moreover, the microbiome regulates the composition and recirculation of bile acids, which are crucial for the solubilization and absorption of lipophilic drugs. Altered bile acid profiles due to microbial dysbiosis can therefore impair drug absorption and effectiveness [11].

c. Impact on Drug Transporters

Some microbial products can affect the expression of intestinal drug transporters such as P-glycoprotein (P-gp), which plays a major role in limiting oral drug absorption by actively pumping drugs back into the gut lumen. Changes in transporter activity can thus alter pharmacokinetics and drug efficacy.

Microbiome-drug interactions represent a paradigm shift in pharmacology, highlighting the gut microbiome as a dynamic and influential player in drug disposition. Through direct biotransformation, modulation of host metabolism, and alteration of drug absorption, gut microbes significantly impact the safety and efficacy of various therapeutics. As our understanding deepens, incorporating microbiome profiling into personalized medicine may become a standard practice, enabling more precise, effective, and safer drug therapy. Continued research and integration of multi-omics approaches will further unveil the complexity and therapeutic potential of microbiome-pharmacology interactions [12].

Therapeutic Implications and Applications of Microbiome Pharmacology

The growing understanding of the gut microbiome’s role in health and disease has sparked a revolution in pharmacology and therapeutics. Far beyond a passive participant in digestion, the microbiome is now recognized as a powerful modulator of drug response, efficacy, and toxicity. Leveraging this insight, researchers and clinicians are developing innovative therapeutic approaches to manipulate and work in concert with the microbiome. These include microbiome-based drug delivery systems, probiotics and prebiotics as adjuvants, personalized therapy based on microbiome profiles, and fecal microbiota transplantation (FMT). Each of these strategies represents a shift toward more precise, targeted, and biologically integrated forms of treatment.

1. Microbiome-Based Drug Delivery

One of the most exciting innovations in this field is the development of microbiome-based drug delivery systems, where engineered bacteria act as living therapeutics. These bacteria are genetically modified to sense environmental conditions and release therapeutic agents directly at disease sites, offering improved targeting and reduced systemic side effects [13].

a. Colon-Specific Delivery in IBD

A major application is in inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), including Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis. These chronic conditions often require immunosuppressive drugs that carry systemic risks. Researchers have developed engineered strains of *E. coli* or *Lactococcus lactis* that can detect inflammation markers and secrete anti-inflammatory cytokines like interleukin-10 (IL-10) right at the inflamed gut mucosa. This localized drug release minimizes systemic immunosuppression and maximizes therapeutic efficacy.

b. Responsive and Smart Therapeutics

Some engineered microbes are designed to respond dynamically to disease cues, such as pH changes, oxidative stress, or immune signals. These "smart therapeutics" may release drugs, modulate immune responses, or even compete with pathogenic bacteria, offering a versatile platform for treating not only gut-related conditions but also metabolic disorders and cancer [14].

2. Probiotics and Prebiotics as Adjuvants

Another therapeutic approach involves the use of probiotics (live beneficial bacteria) and prebiotics (compounds that support beneficial bacteria) as adjuvants to conventional pharmacotherapy. These can restore microbial balance (eubiosis) and enhance drug response across a range of disorders.

a. Psychiatric and Neurological Disorders

The gut-brain axis, a bidirectional communication network between the gut microbiome and the central nervous system, plays a crucial role in mental health. Probiotic supplementation with strains such as *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* and *Bifidobacterium longum* has been associated with reduced anxiety and depressive symptoms, partly due to enhanced production of GABA and serotonin. These strains can also modulate the response to antidepressants and antipsychotics, making them valuable in psychiatric pharmacotherapy [15].

b. Metabolic and Inflammatory Diseases

In metabolic disorders like type 2 diabetes and obesity, prebiotics such as inulin and fructooligosaccharides promote the growth of SCFA-producing bacteria. These SCFAs improve insulin sensitivity, reduce inflammation, and support weight management. When used alongside antidiabetic medications, prebiotics and probiotics can enhance glycemic control and reduce side effects.

c. Enhancing Drug Bioavailability

Probiotic bacteria can improve intestinal barrier function and enzymatic activity, which may enhance the bioavailability of poorly absorbed drugs. They can also reduce adverse effects such as antibiotic-associated diarrhea or mucosal toxicity from chemotherapy [16].

3. Personalized Therapy Based on Microbiome Profiles

The concept of precision medicine has extended to microbiome research, where individual microbiome signatures can predict therapeutic outcomes. This opens the door to microbiome-informed therapy, where treatment regimens are tailored based on microbial composition and function.

a. Immunotherapy in Cancer

Checkpoint inhibitors like PD-1 and PD-L1 antibodies have transformed cancer treatment, but response rates vary widely. Recent studies have found that the presence of certain gut bacteria (e.g., *Akkermansia muciniphila*, *Bifidobacterium*) is associated with enhanced response to immunotherapy in melanoma and lung cancer. Conversely, antibiotic use before or during immunotherapy can disrupt microbiota and reduce treatment efficacy. These findings are prompting efforts to screen and modulate the microbiome in oncology patients to improve immunotherapy outcomes.

b. Antipsychotic-Induced Metabolic Effects

Antipsychotic medications like olanzapine and risperidone are known to cause weight gain and insulin resistance, with variability among patients. Emerging evidence suggests that differences in gut microbiota influence these side effects. For example, a higher abundance of Firmicutes relative to Bacteroidetes has been linked to increased weight gain. Monitoring and modifying the microbiome could help mitigate these adverse effects and personalize psychiatric treatment [17].

4. Fecal Microbiota Transplantation (FMT)

Fecal Microbiota Transplantation (FMT) involves the transfer of stool from a healthy donor into the gastrointestinal tract of a patient to restore microbial balance. Originally developed for recurrent *Clostridioides difficile* infection (CDI), FMT is now being explored in a wide range of conditions where microbiome disruption is implicated.

a. Beyond CDI: Expanding Indications

FMT is currently being studied for use in ulcerative colitis, irritable bowel syndrome (IBS), metabolic syndrome, and even neuropsychiatric disorders such as autism and depression. In cancer therapy, FMT has shown potential in resensitizing patients to immune checkpoint inhibitors who had previously failed treatment.

b. Standardization and Safety

Although promising, FMT faces challenges in terms of standardization, donor screening, and long-term safety. Advances are being made toward developing synthetic stool preparations and defined microbial consortia that offer the benefits of FMT without its associated risks [18].

Current Challenges and Research Directions in Microbiome Pharmacology

As the field of microbiome pharmacology rapidly evolves, it presents transformative opportunities in personalized medicine and drug development. However, these advancements are accompanied by significant scientific, clinical, and regulatory challenges. To fully harness the therapeutic potential of the gut microbiome, researchers must address critical issues such as standardization of sampling techniques, development of microbiome-informed pharmacokinetic models, the creation of regulatory frameworks, and the execution of large-scale clinical trials. Concurrently, recent advances from 2023 to 2025—including synthetic microbiota consortia, multi-omics platforms, and pharmabiotics—are pushing the boundaries of this emerging discipline.

1. Standardization of Microbiome Sampling and Sequencing Methods

A major obstacle in microbiome research is the lack of standardized protocols for sample collection, storage, DNA extraction, sequencing, and data interpretation. Differences in these procedures lead to variability in results, hindering reproducibility and cross-study comparisons.

- **Sample Collection and Preservation**: The method and timing of fecal sample collection, as well as the use of stabilizing agents, can greatly influence the microbial profile. Without consistent handling, microbial DNA can degrade or change, skewing results.
- **Sequencing Approaches**: While 16S rRNA sequencing provides taxonomic information, it lacks functional data. Whole genome shotgun sequencing offers deeper insights but is more resource-intensive. Different platforms and bioinformatics tools further complicate comparisons.
- **Data Interpretation**: Varying algorithms, reference databases, and analysis pipelines can lead to inconsistent taxonomic or functional annotations, making it difficult to translate findings into clinical applications.

To overcome this, there is a growing movement toward international guidelines and open-source data sharing platforms (e.g., the Human Microbiome Project, Earth Microbiome Project) to encourage harmonization [19].

2. Development of Microbiome-Informed Pharmacokinetic Models

Traditional pharmacokinetic (PK) models often overlook microbial contributions, focusing solely on host enzymes, absorption, and excretion. However, the microbiome can metabolize drugs before absorption, influence hepatic enzyme expression, and alter drug transport, necessitating the development of microbiome-informed PK/PD models.

- **Microbial Enzyme Activity**: For instance, microbial β-glucuronidase activity affects the enterohepatic recycling of drugs like irinotecan. Incorporating such variables into PK models could improve predictions of drug behavior and toxicity.
- **Inter-Individual Variability**: Variations in microbiota composition among individuals lead to differences in drug metabolism and response. Integrating microbiome data into PK models could personalize drug dosing and reduce adverse events.
- **Systems Biology Approaches**: Emerging computational tools now aim to simulate host-microbiome-drug interactions using machine learning and physiologically based pharmacokinetic (PBPK) models, though these remain in early stages.

These microbiome-integrated PK models are crucial for **dose optimization**, especially for narrow therapeutic index drugs and biologics.

3. Regulatory Frameworks for Microbiome-Based Therapeutics and Diagnostics

With the rise of microbiome-modulating therapies (e.g., probiotics, engineered bacteria, fecal microbiota transplantation), regulatory agencies face the challenge of classifying and overseeing these new modalities.

- **Classification Ambiguity**: It is unclear whether these should be regulated as drugs, biologics, live biotherapeutic products (LBPs), or medical devices. Different jurisdictions (e.g., FDA vs. EMA) have varying definitions and pathways for approval.
- **Manufacturing and Quality Control**: Ensuring purity, potency, and reproducibility of live bacterial products is difficult. Variability in microbial viability, genetic stability, and host interactions complicates quality assurance.
- **Safety and Ethical Concerns**: Regulatory bodies must address issues like horizontal gene transfer, long-term safety, and donor screening (especially for FMT). Furthermore, ethical questions arise concerning ownership of microbiome data and the use of genetically modified microbes in humans [20].

4. Need for Large-Scale Clinical Trials Linking Microbiome Data with Pharmacodynamics

Most current microbiome studies are limited to small cohorts or animal models, making it difficult to generalize findings or establish causality between microbiome profiles and drug response. Large, multi-center clinical trials are urgently needed.

- **Trial Design Complexity**: Microbiome dynamics are influenced by numerous confounding factors, including diet, age, medication history, genetics, and environment. Trials must control for these variables to produce reliable results.
- **Endpoints and Biomarkers**: Defining standardized clinical endpoints and microbiome-based biomarkers (e.g., specific taxa or metabolites) is crucial for evaluating therapeutic efficacy and safety.
- **Longitudinal Studies**: Long-term monitoring is required to assess the durability of microbiome interventions, potential resistance development, and host adaptation.

Several large initiatives, such as the American Gut Project and Microbiome Outcomes Predictive Trials (MOPED), aim to bridge this gap by correlating microbiome changes with pharmacological outcomes [21].

Microbiome Pharmacology: Emerging Innovations

❖ **Development of Synthetic Microbiota Consortia to Optimize Drug Metabolism**

To replace the unpredictability of FMT, researchers are now creating synthetic microbial consortia—defined communities of cultured bacteria with known properties. These consortia aim to mimic or enhance specific metabolic functions.

- ✓ **Precision Modulation**: These defined mixtures can be tailored to degrade toxins, improve drug bioavailability, or modulate host immunity.
- ✓ **Reproducibility and Safety**: Unlike FMT, synthetic consortia offer controlled composition, easier quality control, and reduced risk of pathogen transmission.
- ✓ **Applications**: Early trials using consortia in ulcerative colitis and hepatic encephalopathy have shown promising results in restoring microbial balance and improving drug tolerance.

This approach marks a shift from using complex and variable donor material to rationally designed microbiome therapeutics.

❖ **Use of Multi-Omics Platforms (Metagenomics, Metabolomics) to Stratify Patient Drug Response**

Recent years have seen a surge in multi-omics integration—combining data from metagenomics, transcriptomics, proteomics, and metabolomics—to achieve a holistic view of the microbiome's impact on drug therapy.

- ✓ **Metagenomics** identifies microbial species and functional genes.
- ✓ **Metabolomics** captures bioactive compounds (e.g., SCFAs, bile acids) that influence drug metabolism and immune modulation.
- ✓ **Proteomics** assesses microbial enzyme profiles directly involved in drug metabolism.

These platforms help in patient stratification, predicting which individuals are likely to benefit from a drug or experience adverse effects. For instance, metagenomic sequencing can reveal the presence of bacteria with drug-degrading enzymes, informing alternative therapy choices.

❖ **Introduction of "Pharmabiotics" – Engineered Microbial Therapeutics**

"Pharmabiotics" refer to genetically engineered bacteria designed to synthesize and deliver therapeutic molecules directly within the host. This cutting-edge concept blends synthetic biology with microbiology and pharmacology.

- ✓ **Targeted Delivery**: Engineered microbes can sense disease-specific signals and release anti-inflammatory agents, hormones, or small molecules in situ.

- ✓ **Dynamic Modulation**: These living drugs can adjust therapeutic output in real time, offering advantages over static drug formulations.
- ✓ **Examples**:
  - *Lactococcus lactis* engineered to produce IL-10 for Crohn's disease.
  - *E. coli* strains modified to degrade phenylalanine in phenylketonuria (PKU).
  - *Bacteroides* engineered to produce immune checkpoint inhibitors at tumor sites.

Ongoing trials aim to validate the safety and efficacy of these pharmabiotics in chronic and immune-mediated diseases [22].

Microbiome pharmacology is redefining the future of medicine, offering new ways to optimize drug efficacy, reduce toxicity, and personalize therapy. However, substantial challenges remain. Standardizing methodologies, building robust regulatory frameworks, and conducting large-scale trials are essential for clinical translation. At the same time, technological innovations such as synthetic microbiota consortia, multi-omics integration, and pharmabiotics are driving the field forward. By bridging foundational science with translational research, the coming years promise to unlock the full potential of the microbiome as a central player in pharmacological science and therapeutic innovation.

The integration of microbiome science into therapeutics is reshaping modern pharmacology. From engineered bacteria for targeted drug delivery, to probiotic adjuvants, and personalized treatments guided by microbiome profiles, these innovations represent a new frontier in medicine. FMT and other microbiome-modulating techniques are expanding their therapeutic reach, offering novel strategies to enhance efficacy, reduce side effects, and promote long-term health. As research continues, microbiome-targeted therapies are expected to become central to personalized and precision medicine, redefining how we approach disease prevention, treatment, and drug development [23].

Conclusion and Future Perspective:

The gut microbiome plays a fundamental role in modulating host metabolic and endocrine functions. It acts through diverse mechanisms, including metabolite production, immune modulation, hormone regulation, and gut-brain signalling. Disruption of this microbial ecosystem is strongly associated with the development and progression of metabolic diseases such as obesity, type 2 diabetes, and PCOS. Restoration of microbial balance through nutritional, pharmacological, or microbial interventions presents a promising strategy for preventing or reversing these disorders. Future research should focus on deciphering microbiota-host interactions at the molecular level and identifying personalized interventions based on individual microbiome profiles. With advancements in metagenomics and metabolomics, future studies are expected to uncover specific microbial strains and pathways crucial in endocrine signalling. Personalized microbiome modulation, precision probiotics, and engineered microbial consortia may revolutionize the prevention and treatment of endocrine and metabolic disorders.

Longitudinal and multi-omics studies integrating microbiome data with host genetics, diet, and lifestyle factors will be pivotal in translating research into clinical applications.

References:

1. Thursby E, Juge N. Introduction to the human gut microbiota. *Biochem J.* 2017;474(11):1823–36. doi:10.1042/BCJ20160510
2. Cani PD, Jordan BF. Gut microbiota-mediated inflammation in obesity: a link with gastrointestinal cancer. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol.* 2018;15(11):671–682. doi:10.1038/s41575-018-0025-6
3. Marchesi JR, Adams DH, Fava F, Hermes GD, Hirschfield GM, Hold G, *et al.* The gut microbiota and host health: a new clinical frontier. *Gut.* 2016;65(2):330–339. doi:10.1136/gutjnl-2015-309990
4. Wilson ID, Nicholson JK. Gut microbiome interactions with drug metabolism, efficacy, and toxicity. *Transl Res.* 2017;179:204–222. doi:10.1016/j.trsl.2016.08.002
5. Haiser HJ, Gootenberg DB, Chatman K, Sirasani G, Balskus EP, Turnbaugh PJ. Predicting and manipulating cardiac drug inactivation by the human gut bacterium *Eggerthella lenta*. *Science.* 2013;341(6143):295–298. doi:10.1126/science.1235872
6. Wallace BD, Wang H, Lane KT, Scott JE, Orans J, Koo JS, *et al.* Alleviating cancer drug toxicity by inhibiting a bacterial enzyme. *Science.* 2010;330(6005):831–835. doi:10.1126/science.1191175
7. Peppercorn MA, Goldman P. The role of intestinal bacteria in the metabolism of salicylazosulfapyridine. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther.* 1972;181(3):555–562.
8. Selwyn FP, Cheng SL, Klaassen CD. Regulation of hepatic drug-metabolizing enzymes by short-chain fatty acids and gut microbiota in mice. *Drug Metab Dispos.* 2016;44(4):536–544. doi:10.1124/dmd.115.067694
9. Clarke G, Sandhu KV, Griffin BT, Dinan TG, Cryan JF, Hyland NP. Gut reactions: breaking down xenobiotic–microbiome interactions. *Pharmacol Rev.* 2019;71(2):198–224. doi:10.1124/pr.118.015768
10. Enright EF, Gahan CGM, Joyce SA, Griffin BT. The impact of the gut microbiota on drug metabolism and clinical outcome. *Yale J Biol Med.* 2016;89(3):375–382.
11. Spanogiannopoulos P, Bess EN, Carmody RN, Turnbaugh PJ. The microbial pharmacists within us: a metagenomic view of xenobiotic metabolism. *Nat Rev Microbiol.* 2016;14(5):273–287. doi:10.1038/nrmicro.2016.17
12. Martinez-Guryn K, Hubert N, Frazier K, Urlass S, Musch MW, Ojeda P, *et al.* Small intestine microbiota regulate host digestive and absorptive adaptive responses to dietary lipids. *Cell Host Microbe.* 2018;23(4):458–469.e5. doi:10.1016/j.chom.2018.03.011

13. Charbonneau MR, Isabella VM, Li N, Kurtz CB. Developing a new class of engineered live bacterial therapeutics to treat human diseases. *Nat Commun.* 2020;11(1):1738. doi:10.1038/s41467-020-15508-1
14. Hamady ZZ, Scott N, Farrar MD, Wadhwa M, Dilger P, Whitehead TR, *et al.* Treatment of colitis with a commensal gut bacterium engineered to secrete human TGF-β1 under the control of dietary xylan. *Inflamm Bowel Dis.* 2010;16(3):571–578. doi:10.1002/ibd.21064
15. Desbonnet L, Garrett L, Clarke G, Bienenstock J, Dinan TG. The probiotic *Bifidobacteria infantis*: An assessment of potential antidepressant properties in the rat. *J Psychiatr Res.* 2008;43(2):164–174. doi:10.1016/j.jpsychires.2008.03.009
16. Cani PD, Lecourt E, Dewulf EM, Sohet FM, Pachikian BD, Naslain D, *et al.* Gut microbiota fermentation of prebiotics increases satietogenic and incretin gut peptide production with consequences for appetite sensation and glucose response after a meal. *Am J Clin Nutr.* 2009;90(5):1236–1243. doi:10.3945/ajcn.2009.28095
17. Routy B, Le Chatelier E, Derosa L, Duong CPM, Alou MT, Daillère R, *et al.* Gut microbiome influences efficacy of PD-1–based immunotherapy against epithelial tumors. *Science.* 2018;359(6371):91–97. doi:10.1126/science.aan3706
18. Paramsothy S, Kamm MA, Kaakoush NO, Walsh AJ, van den Bogaerde J, Samuel D, *et al.* Multidonor intensive faecal microbiota transplantation for active ulcerative colitis: a randomised placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet.* 2017; 389(10075):1218–28. doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(17)30182-4.
19. Knight R, Vrbanac A, Taylor BC, Aksenov A, Callewaert C, Debelius J, *et al.* Best practices for analysing microbiomes. *Nat Rev Microbiol.* 2018;16(7):410–22. doi:10.1038/s41579-018-0029-9.
20. Spanogiannopoulos P, Bess EN, Carmody RN, Turnbaugh PJ. The microbial pharmacists within us: a metagenomic view of xenobiotic metabolism. *Nat Rev Microbiol.* 2016;14(5):273–87. doi:10.1038/nrmicro.2016.17
21. Zhernakova A, Kurilshikov A, Bonder MJ, Tigchelaar EF, Schirmer M, Vatanen T, *et al.* Population-based metagenomics analysis reveals markers for gut microbiome composition and diversity. *Science.* 2016;352(6285):565–9. doi:10.1126/science.aad3369
22. Dodd D, Spitzer MH, Van Treuren W, Merrill BD, Hryckowian AJ, Higginbottom SK, Le A, Cowan TM, Nolan GP, Fischbach MA, Sonnenburg JL. A gut bacterial pathway metabolizes aromatic amino acids into nine circulating metabolites. Nature. 2017;551(7682):648–52.
23. Liu Y, Yang K, Shi H, Xu J, Ma X. Integrating multi-omics data to dissect mechanisms of immune checkpoint inhibitor immunotherapy. Front Oncol. 2021;11:661613.

Bhumi Publishing, India
June 2025

POLYMERSOMES AS NEXT-GENERATION NANOCARRIERS FOR DRUG AND GENE DELIVERY

Chintan Aundhia
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara, Gujarat 391760 India
Corresponding author E-mail: aundhia@gmail.com

Abstract:

Polymersomes, self-assembled vesicular structures composed of amphiphilic block copolymers, have emerged as a promising class of nanocarriers for drug and gene delivery applications. Their superior structural stability, tunable membrane properties, and ability to encapsulate both hydrophilic and hydrophobic payloads offer significant advantages over conventional lipid-based systems. Unlike liposomes, polymersomes exhibit enhanced mechanical robustness and longer circulation times, which make them suitable for the delivery of sensitive biomolecules such as nucleic acids, proteins, and small-molecule drugs. The architecture of polymersomes can be precisely engineered to respond to various physiological stimuli, including pH, redox gradients, and enzymatic activity, thereby enabling site-specific and controlled release. Moreover, surface functionalization strategies using ligands, antibodies, or peptides allow for targeted delivery to specific cell types or tissues, minimizing off-target effects and enhancing therapeutic outcomes. This chapter provides a comprehensive overview of the synthesis, structural properties, and functional modifications of polymersomes, with a focus on their role in drug and gene delivery. It also highlights current advancements in their application to various diseases, explores the challenges in clinical translation, and outlines future directions for research and development in this rapidly evolving field.

Keywords: Polymersomes, Nanocarriers, Gene Delivery, Drug Delivery, Amphiphilic Block Copolymers, Targeted Delivery, Stimuli-Responsive Nanocarriers, Controlled Release

1. Introduction:

1.1 Overview of Nanocarriers in Modern Therapeutics

Over the past few decades, the field of nanomedicine has revolutionized the way therapeutic agents are delivered, especially for complex diseases requiring targeted and controlled treatment. Nanocarriers are engineered platforms typically ranging in size from 10 to 200 nanometers, designed to transport therapeutic agents to specific sites in the body while minimizing systemic toxicity. The primary objective of nanocarrier systems is to enhance the pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic profiles of drugs and nucleic acids, improve bioavailability, and ensure their stability in biological environments. Traditional drug delivery platforms often suffer from rapid clearance, poor solubility, and a lack of target specificity,

leading to suboptimal therapeutic outcomes. Nanocarriers, including liposomes, micelles, dendrimers, nanoparticles, and more recently, polymersomes, have been developed to overcome these limitations. Their design allows for passive targeting via the enhanced permeability and retention (EPR) effect and, with additional functionalization, active targeting through receptor-mediated endocytosis. The choice of carrier system significantly influences not only the delivery efficiency but also the safety and clinical success of a therapeutic formulation.(1)

Among the many types of nanocarriers explored, polymersomes have emerged as one of the most promising platforms due to their unique structural, mechanical, and functional characteristics. Unlike traditional lipid vesicles such as liposomes, which are composed of phospholipids, polymersomes are vesicular structures formed by the self-assembly of amphiphilic block copolymers in aqueous environments. These polymersomes offer greater flexibility in design, enhanced structural integrity, and a longer circulation half-life, which make them particularly suitable for delivering both hydrophilic and hydrophobic agents. The rise in demand for precision medicine and the delivery of sensitive biological molecules, including proteins, nucleic acids, and CRISPR components, further amplifies the need for such advanced carrier systems.(2)

1.2 Emergence and Significance of Polymersomes

Polymersomes represent the next-generation nanocarriers that bridge the gap between biological compatibility and advanced structural customization. Their emergence in drug delivery research has been fueled by the need for carriers that provide higher stability under physiological conditions, customizable surface functionality, and the capacity for dual or multi-drug loading. Structurally, polymersomes are formed through the spontaneous organization of amphiphilic block copolymers into bilayer membranes, mimicking the architecture of biological vesicles. However, their membrane thickness and mechanical strength exceed those of liposomes, providing improved protection for encapsulated cargo against enzymatic degradation, pH fluctuations, and shear stress during systemic circulation.

The versatility of polymersomes lies in their design, which allows for fine-tuning of their properties such as size, surface charge, hydrophilic-hydrophobic balance, and degradation kinetics. This is achieved by manipulating the composition and block length of the copolymers used. Importantly, polymersomes can be engineered to respond to various physiological stimuli, such as pH gradients, redox conditions, enzymatic activity, or temperature changes. These stimuli-responsive capabilities enable the triggered release of therapeutic agents specifically at the disease site, thereby maximizing therapeutic efficacy and minimizing off-target effects. For example, in the acidic microenvironment of tumors or within intracellular endosomes, pH-sensitive polymersomes can destabilize and release their contents in a controlled manner.(3)

Moreover, polymersomes have shown immense potential in gene delivery applications, which require carriers capable of condensing and protecting nucleic acids while ensuring efficient cellular uptake and endosomal escape. The synthetic nature of block copolymers used in polymersome fabrication also provides an opportunity to conjugate targeting ligands, antibodies, or peptides on their surface to enhance selective accumulation in target tissues. This degree of customization makes polymersomes adaptable platforms suitable for a wide range of therapeutic applications, from chemotherapy and immunotherapy to the delivery of genetic material in gene editing and RNA interference strategies.

The significance of polymersomes is further underscored by their potential to address several challenges that hinder the clinical translation of nanocarrier-based therapies. These include issues of drug loading capacity, premature release, poor targeting, and systemic toxicity. As the field of nanomedicine continues to evolve toward more personalized, disease-specific solutions, polymersomes are well-positioned to serve as multifunctional platforms that integrate therapeutic delivery with diagnostic and imaging capabilities. Their development marks a significant advancement in the rational design of nanocarriers, aligning with the broader goals of precision and regenerative medicine.

2. Structure and Physicochemical Properties of Polymersomes

2.1 Morphology and Self-Assembly Behavior

Polymersomes are vesicular nanostructures formed through the self-assembly of amphiphilic block copolymers in aqueous media. These block copolymers comprise hydrophilic and hydrophobic segments, which, upon exposure to water, undergo spontaneous organization into bilayer membranes that enclose an aqueous core. This behavior is driven by thermodynamic principles aimed at minimizing the free energy of the system, wherein the hydrophobic blocks aggregate to avoid water, while the hydrophilic blocks orient toward the aqueous environment. The resultant bilayer structure closely mimics that of natural biological membranes, though with significantly enhanced mechanical stability and thickness, typically in the range of 5 to 50 nanometers.

The morphology of polymersomes can vary widely depending on the polymer composition, molecular weight ratio of the blocks, and the conditions under which self-assembly occurs. Common morphologies include spherical vesicles, tubular structures, stomatocytes, and discoidal forms. The spherical morphology is the most widely studied and used for drug delivery due to its minimal surface energy and favorable pharmacokinetics. The size of the polymersomes can be precisely controlled, generally ranging from 50 nanometers to several micrometers, although for systemic delivery, sizes between 100 and 200 nanometers are typically preferred to exploit the enhanced permeability and retention (EPR) effect in pathological tissues such as tumors.(2)

Self-assembly can be facilitated by various techniques, including film hydration, solvent exchange, and microfluidics. Each technique influences the final morphology and encapsulation efficiency. The flexibility of controlling shape and size offers distinct advantages in optimizing circulation time, biodistribution, and cellular uptake. Moreover, polymersomes can encapsulate hydrophilic drugs within their aqueous core, hydrophobic agents within the membrane bilayer, and amphiphilic compounds at the interface, thus supporting co-delivery strategies.

2.2 Membrane Characteristics and Stability

One of the defining features of polymersomes is the composition and architecture of their bilayer membrane. Unlike the lipid bilayers of liposomes, which are relatively thin and susceptible to instability under physiological stress, polymersome membranes are significantly thicker and more robust due to the longer hydrophobic blocks of synthetic polymers. This enhanced membrane thickness not only increases mechanical rigidity but also provides better protection for the encapsulated therapeutic agents, particularly in harsh physiological environments where enzymatic degradation and shear stress pose significant challenges.

The choice of block copolymers profoundly influences membrane properties, including permeability, fluidity, and responsiveness to environmental stimuli. Commonly used polymers include poly(ethylene glycol) (PEG) for the hydrophilic segment and poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(caprolactone) (PCL), or poly(butadiene) (PBD) for the hydrophobic block. The hydrophilic-lipophilic balance (HLB) of the copolymer plays a pivotal role in determining the type of self-assembled structure formed and its subsequent stability. For example, an increase in the hydrophilic block length generally promotes the formation of micelles, whereas a more balanced ratio favors vesicle formation.(4)

Polymersomes exhibit high colloidal stability and reduced leakage compared to liposomes, making them suitable for long-term drug delivery applications. Furthermore, the dense PEGylated outer shell can impart stealth properties, reducing opsonization and clearance by the mononuclear phagocyte system (MPS), thereby prolonging circulation half-life. This feature is especially critical for applications requiring sustained or repeated dosing.

2.3 Functional Tunability and Stimuli Responsiveness

One of the most valuable attributes of polymersomes is their tunable responsiveness to specific physiological or pathological stimuli. By selecting appropriate monomers and polymer architectures, polymersomes can be engineered to respond to changes in pH, temperature, redox potential, enzymatic activity, or the presence of specific biomolecules. This responsiveness allows for controlled and site-specific drug release, reducing systemic toxicity and enhancing therapeutic efficacy.

pH-sensitive polymersomes are particularly useful in targeting acidic environments such as tumor tissues or endosomal compartments. In such systems, the polymer undergoes

conformational changes or hydrolytic degradation under acidic conditions, destabilizing the vesicle and triggering cargo release. Similarly, redox-sensitive polymersomes leverage the elevated levels of intracellular glutathione (GSH) in cancer cells to initiate disulfide bond cleavage, promoting membrane destabilization and intracellular release of the payload.(5)

Thermoresponsive polymersomes can be designed using polymers such as poly(N-isopropylacrylamide) (PNIPAAm), which undergo phase transitions at specific temperatures. Enzyme-responsive polymersomes degrade selectively in the presence of disease-associated enzymes, such as matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) or lipases, enabling precise drug delivery in inflamed or cancerous tissues.

The functional tunability of polymersomes also extends to their surface modification. Ligands such as antibodies, peptides, or small molecules can be conjugated to the outer surface to enable active targeting of specific cell receptors. This targeted approach enhances cellular uptake through receptor-mediated endocytosis and improves localization to the intended tissue. Additionally, polymersomes can be co-loaded with imaging agents or fluorescent markers, facilitating real-time tracking and theranostic applications.

3. Polymersomes for Drug Delivery Applications

3.1 Encapsulation Strategies and Drug Loading Efficiency

Polymersomes offer a unique advantage in drug delivery due to their dual-compartment structure that enables simultaneous encapsulation of both hydrophilic and hydrophobic drugs. The hydrophilic core serves as an excellent reservoir for water-soluble therapeutic agents, such as peptides, proteins, and small-molecule drugs, whereas the hydrophobic bilayer accommodates poorly soluble or lipophilic drugs. This versatility allows for the development of multifunctional delivery systems that can co-transport synergistic drug combinations for combination therapy.

The encapsulation of drugs within polymersomes can be achieved through a variety of strategies, including passive loading during self-assembly, solvent evaporation techniques, film hydration, and active loading mechanisms such as pH gradients or ion pairing. Passive loading relies on the incorporation of drug molecules during the formation of the vesicles, but the efficiency can be limited by the solubility of the drug in the assembly medium. Active loading techniques, adapted from liposomal systems, can significantly enhance drug encapsulation efficiency by creating transmembrane gradients that drive the accumulation of charged or amphiphilic drugs within the vesicle interior.(6)

The physicochemical properties of the copolymer, including the molecular weight, hydrophilic-to-hydrophobic block ratio, and critical micelle concentration (CMC), play a decisive role in determining the encapsulation efficiency, drug release profile, and stability of the polymersomes. Hydrophobic drug loading is primarily governed by the affinity of the drug for the membrane-forming polymer and its partition coefficient. On the other hand, the

encapsulation of hydrophilic compounds may depend on vesicle size, membrane permeability, and the volume of the aqueous core.(7)

Recent innovations in polymersome technology have focused on increasing drug loading through the incorporation of functionalized copolymers and responsive linkers that enable covalent drug attachment. These approaches not only improve loading but also allow for controlled and stimuli-sensitive drug release in response to internal or external triggers, enhancing therapeutic precision.

3.2 Controlled and Targeted Drug Release

One of the most compelling features of polymersomes is their capacity for controlled and targeted drug release, which is pivotal for enhancing therapeutic efficacy and minimizing systemic toxicity. Controlled release is primarily achieved through the modulation of membrane permeability and degradation kinetics, which can be tailored by adjusting the polymer composition, degree of crystallinity, and hydrophobicity of the bilayer.

Targeted delivery can be broadly categorized into passive and active targeting. Passive targeting leverages the enhanced permeability and retention (EPR) effect observed in tumor tissues and inflamed sites, where leaky vasculature permits the accumulation of nanoscale carriers like polymersomes. The prolonged circulation time conferred by PEGylation ensures adequate systemic distribution and preferential accumulation in diseased tissues.

Active targeting, in contrast, involves the functionalization of polymersome surfaces with ligands that specifically bind to overexpressed receptors on target cells. Common ligands include folic acid, transferrin, antibodies, and peptides such as RGD (arginine–glycine–aspartic acid). These moieties facilitate receptor-mediated endocytosis, thereby enhancing intracellular delivery and bypassing nonspecific uptake by healthy tissues.(8)

To ensure site-specific drug release, polymersomes can be engineered to respond to internal stimuli such as pH gradients, redox environments, and enzyme concentrations, or external stimuli such as light, temperature, or ultrasound. For example, pH-sensitive polymersomes degrade selectively in acidic tumor microenvironments or endosomal compartments, thereby releasing their cargo intracellularly. Redox-responsive systems exploit the differential concentration of reducing agents like glutathione between the extracellular matrix and the cytosol to trigger disulfide bond cleavage and vesicle destabilization. Such smart delivery systems enable drugs to be released precisely at the intended site of action, reducing the dosage required and limiting adverse effects.(3)

4. Gene and siRNA Delivery Using Polymersomes

4.1 Rationale for Nucleic Acid Delivery

Gene therapy and RNA interference (RNAi) have emerged as transformative therapeutic strategies for a broad range of genetic and acquired diseases. However, the clinical translation of

nucleic acid-based therapies—such as plasmid DNA (pDNA), messenger RNA (mRNA), and small interfering RNA (siRNA)—has been hampered by several barriers including enzymatic degradation in the extracellular environment, rapid renal clearance, poor cellular uptake, and inefficient endosomal escape. These macromolecules are inherently unstable and negatively charged, making passive diffusion across cellular membranes virtually impossible. Furthermore, systemic administration often leads to nonspecific distribution, off-target effects, and immune activation.

Polymersomes offer a versatile and robust platform for gene and siRNA delivery due to their structural adaptability, tunable membrane properties, and amenability to surface modifications. Their aqueous core allows for the efficient encapsulation or electrostatic complexation of nucleic acids, while the protective hydrophobic bilayer shields these labile molecules from enzymatic degradation and immune recognition. Moreover, the possibility of incorporating endosomal escape mechanisms and targeting ligands into polymersomes enhances intracellular delivery and therapeutic specificity, addressing critical barriers in nucleic acid delivery.(9)

4.2 Encapsulation and Release of Nucleic Acids

The encapsulation of nucleic acids within polymersomes can be achieved through several strategies, including electrostatic complexation with cationic polymers, covalent conjugation, and physical entrapment during self-assembly. In particular, block copolymers that incorporate cationic segments, such as polyethylenimine (PEI) or poly(L-lysine), can condense negatively charged nucleic acids via electrostatic interactions, forming stable polyplexes within or on the surface of the polymersome.

The morphology of polymersomes plays a crucial role in determining encapsulation efficiency and release kinetics. For example, spherical polymersomes provide a high internal volume for nucleic acid loading, while more complex structures such as stomatocytes or tubular vesicles can be used for sequential or co-delivery of multiple genetic materials. Surface modification with polyethylene glycol (PEG) or zwitterionic polymers enhances circulation time and reduces aggregation, thereby improving delivery efficacy.(6)

Controlled release of nucleic acids from polymersomes is achieved through environmental stimuli such as pH, redox potential, or enzymatic activity. Acid-sensitive polymers disassemble in the acidic endosomal environment, facilitating the release of the nucleic acid cargo and promoting escape into the cytosol. Redox-sensitive disulfide linkages degrade in the presence of intracellular glutathione, a strategy particularly useful for siRNA and antisense oligonucleotides that require cytosolic localization. These controlled release mechanisms not only improve transfection efficiency but also minimize off-target effects and immune stimulation.

4.3 Targeted Gene Regulation and Preclinical Outcomes

Polymersome-mediated gene and siRNA delivery has shown encouraging results in preclinical models for cancer, neurodegenerative diseases, and viral infections. In cancer therapy, siRNA-loaded polymersomes have been used to silence oncogenes such as VEGF, BCL-2, and KRAS, leading to significant tumor regression in xenograft models. The use of targeting ligands, such as antibodies against EGFR or peptides recognizing integrin receptors, has enhanced the selectivity and uptake of these carriers in tumor cells, minimizing systemic toxicity.(10)

In neurodegenerative disorders like Alzheimer's and Parkinson's disease, the delivery of therapeutic genes or RNA molecules across the blood-brain barrier (BBB) remains a critical challenge. Polymersomes functionalized with BBB-targeting ligands, such as transferrin or lactoferrin, have demonstrated the ability to translocate through endothelial cells via receptor-mediated transcytosis. Encapsulated siRNA targeting β-secretase or α-synuclein has led to reduced pathological markers and improved behavioral outcomes in rodent models.

Another promising application is in antiviral therapy, where polymersomes have been employed to deliver siRNA targeting viral genes such as HIV tat/rev and SARS-CoV-2 spike protein. These formulations showed significant inhibition of viral replication and reduced viral load in infected tissues, underscoring their potential in managing emerging infectious diseases.

Compared to viral vectors, polymersomes offer a non-immunogenic and customizable platform with fewer biosafety concerns. Their ability to accommodate large nucleic acid payloads, combined with controlled and targeted release capabilities, positions them as next-generation carriers for gene and RNA therapeutics. Nonetheless, further optimization of endosomal escape mechanisms, large-scale production protocols, and regulatory compliance will be essential for advancing these systems toward clinical application.

5. Polymersomes in Drug Delivery Applications

Polymersomes have emerged as a powerful class of nanocarriers in drug delivery due to their structural robustness, tunable physicochemical properties, and ability to encapsulate both hydrophilic and hydrophobic therapeutic agents. Their vesicular architecture allows for versatile drug-loading strategies, sustained release kinetics, and site-specific delivery, making them particularly attractive in the treatment of complex diseases. Over recent years, polymersomes have been successfully applied in the delivery of chemotherapeutics, anti-inflammatory agents, antivirals, and biologics across challenging biological barriers such as the blood-brain barrier.

5.1 Delivery of Chemotherapeutics

One of the most extensively explored applications of polymersomes is in cancer therapy. Conventional chemotherapeutics often suffer from severe systemic toxicity, poor solubility, and non-specific distribution, leading to suboptimal efficacy and adverse effects. Polymersomes can address these limitations by encapsulating hydrophobic anticancer drugs such as paclitaxel,

doxorubicin, and camptothecin within their hydrophobic membrane, while hydrophilic agents like cisplatin or gemcitabine can be confined to their aqueous core. This dual-compartment loading capability allows for co-delivery of synergistic drug combinations that can exert enhanced cytotoxic effects on tumor cells while minimizing off-target exposure.(11)

Polymersomes can be engineered with surface ligands, such as folic acid, RGD peptides, or antibodies, to actively target tumor-specific receptors, enhancing selective uptake by malignant cells. Moreover, stimuli-responsive polymersomes that degrade or release their payload in response to tumor-specific triggers—such as low pH, redox potential, or overexpressed enzymes—provide precise spatiotemporal control over drug release. For instance, disulfide-containing polymersomes have been employed to release doxorubicin selectively in the reductive environment of cancer cells, thereby sparing healthy tissue. These strategies not only improve therapeutic indices but also reduce dose-limiting toxicities associated with conventional chemotherapy.(12)

5.2 Anti-inflammatory and Antiviral Applications

Beyond oncology, polymersomes have shown significant promise in the treatment of inflammatory and infectious diseases. In inflammatory conditions such as rheumatoid arthritis, inflammatory bowel disease, and psoriasis, the site of inflammation is characterized by oxidative stress, low pH, and elevated levels of inflammatory mediators. Polymersomes can be tailored to respond to these environmental cues, thereby releasing anti-inflammatory agents such as dexamethasone, methotrexate, or curcumin in a controlled and localized manner.

The use of polymersomes for the delivery of anti-inflammatory biologics, such as cytokine inhibitors or monoclonal antibodies, is particularly promising. Encapsulation protects these labile biomolecules from enzymatic degradation and improves their pharmacokinetic profiles. Polymersomes have also been explored as delivery systems for siRNA and other nucleic acids targeting pro-inflammatory gene expression. By combining PEGylation for stealth and endosomal escape functionalities for efficient cytoplasmic delivery, such systems can downregulate inflammatory signaling with high precision.(13)

In the context of viral infections, polymersomes provide a platform for delivering antiviral agents with improved solubility and bioavailability. For instance, polymersomes have been used to encapsulate and deliver agents like acyclovir, remdesivir, and protease inhibitors, improving their stability and targeting infected tissues. Surface modification with targeting ligands such as mannose or CD4 mimics can further enhance uptake by virus-infected cells. Additionally, polymersomes have been employed in vaccine delivery, where they serve both as carriers and adjuvants to elicit strong immune responses against viral pathogens.(14)

5.3 Crossing Biological Barriers (e.g., Blood-Brain Barrier)

One of the most formidable challenges in drug delivery is traversing the blood-brain barrier (BBB), a selectively permeable interface that protects the central nervous system (CNS) from potentially harmful substances but also limits the delivery of therapeutics. Polymersomes, owing to their size tunability, surface functionalization capabilities, and long-circulating properties, have been explored for their potential to cross the BBB and deliver drugs to the brain. To achieve BBB penetration, polymersomes can be designed with specific ligands that exploit receptor-mediated transcytosis pathways. Ligands such as transferrin, lactoferrin, or low-density lipoprotein (LDL) mimetics have been conjugated onto polymersome surfaces to target endothelial receptors at the BBB. Once bound, the nanocarriers are internalized via vesicular transport and released on the brain side, delivering their payload into the CNS. Alternatively, polymersomes can be engineered with cell-penetrating peptides or surfactants like polysorbates to facilitate paracellular transport or disrupt tight junctions temporarily.(15)

Stimuli-responsive polymersomes can be further employed to release neurotherapeutics, such as anti-Parkinson's or anti-Alzheimer's drugs, in response to the acidic or oxidative environment within diseased brain tissue. Moreover, nucleic acid-based therapeutics, including siRNA or CRISPR/Cas9 components, can be encapsulated within polymersomes for gene regulation in neurological diseases. These systems must be carefully optimized to prevent immunogenicity, minimize neurotoxicity, and ensure prolonged retention in the CNS.(16)

Conclusion:

Polymersomes represent a transformative advancement in the field of nanomedicine, offering a versatile and customizable platform for the delivery of both small molecules and macromolecular therapeutics. Their unique bilayer vesicular architecture, which mimics biological membranes, allows for the simultaneous encapsulation of hydrophilic and hydrophobic agents, thereby supporting multi-drug loading and co-delivery strategies. The physicochemical tunability of polymersomes—including membrane thickness, surface charge, hydrophobicity, and degradation kinetics—enables precise control over drug release profiles and biodistribution.

In recent years, polymersomes have demonstrated considerable promise in a wide array of therapeutic contexts. From targeted chemotherapy and inflammation modulation to gene therapy and vaccine delivery, their capacity to address long-standing challenges such as poor solubility, rapid drug clearance, off-target toxicity, and biological barrier penetration is increasingly evident. Especially noteworthy is their success in traversing complex physiological obstacles like the blood-brain barrier, thereby expanding the reach of therapeutic agents into previously inaccessible regions such as the central nervous system.

Despite these advancements, clinical translation of polymersomes remains in its infancy. Challenges related to large-scale production, long-term stability, immunogenicity, and regulatory approval must be addressed through continued interdisciplinary research. Nonetheless, the rapidly growing body of in vitro and in vivo evidence underscores their significant potential. With ongoing innovations in polymer chemistry, nanotechnology, and molecular biology, polymersomes are well-positioned to become integral components of next-generation drug and gene delivery systems. Their ability to integrate functionality, biocompatibility, and precision targeting supports the broader goals of personalized medicine and minimally invasive therapeutic intervention.

References:

1. Ioele G, Chieffallo M, Occhiuzzi MA, De Luca M, Garofalo A, Ragno G, *et al.* Anticancer drugs: recent strategies to improve stability profile, pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic properties. Molecules. 2022;27(17):5436.
2. Kuperkar K, Patel D, Atanase LI, Bahadur P. Amphiphilic block copolymers: their structures, and self-assembly to polymeric micelles and polymersomes as drug delivery vehicles. Polymers. 2022;14(21):4702.
3. Meng F, Zhong Z, Feijen J. Stimuli-responsive polymersomes for programmed drug delivery. Biomacromolecules. 2009;10(2):197-209.
4. Kansız S, Elçin YM. Advanced liposome and polymersome-based drug delivery systems: Considerations for physicochemical properties, targeting strategies and stimuli-sensitive approaches. Advances in Colloid and Interface Science. 2023;317:102930.
5. He X, Li J, An S, Jiang C. pH-sensitive drug-delivery systems for tumor targeting. Therapeutic delivery. 2013;4(12):1499-510.
6. Lee JS, Feijen J. Polymersomes for drug delivery: design, formation and characterization. Journal of controlled release. 2012;161(2):473-83.
7. Maghsoudi S, Taghavi Shahraki B, Rabiee N, Fatahi Y, Dinarvand R, Tavakolizadeh M, *et al.* Burgeoning polymer nano blends for improved controlled drug release: a review. International Journal of Nanomedicine. 2020:4363-92.
8. Anarjan FS. Active targeting drug delivery nanocarriers: Ligands. Nano-Structures & Nano-Objects. 2019;19:100370.
9. De Leo V, Milano F, Agostiano A, Catucci L. Recent advancements in polymer/liposome assembly for drug delivery: from surface modifications to hybrid vesicles. Polymers. 2021;13(7):1027.
10. Yadav K, Sahu KK, Gnanakani SPE, Sure P, Vijayalakshmi R, Sundar VD, *et al.* Biomedical applications of nanomaterials in the advancement of nucleic acid therapy:

mechanistic challenges, delivery strategies, and therapeutic applications. International Journal of Biological Macromolecules. 2023;241:124582.

11. Guan L, Rizzello L, Battaglia G. Polymersomes and their applications in cancer delivery and therapy. Nanomedicine. 2015;10(17):2757-80.
12. Kunjiappan S, Pavadai P, Vellaichamy S, Ram Kumar Pandian S, Ravishankar V, Palanisamy P, *et al.* Surface receptor-mediated targeted drug delivery systems for enhanced cancer treatment: A state-of-the-art review. Drug Development Research. 2021;82(3):309-40.
13. Muso-Cachumba JJ, Feng S, Belaid M, Zhang Y, de Oliveira Rangel-Yagui C, Vllasaliu D. Polymersomes for protein drug delivery across intestinal mucosa. International Journal of Pharmaceutics. 2023;648:123613.
14. Lembo D, Donalisio M, Civra A, Argenziano M, Cavalli R. Nanomedicine formulations for the delivery of antiviral drugs: a promising solution for the treatment of viral infections. Expert Opinion on Drug Delivery. 2018;15(1):93-114.
15. Tashima T. Smart strategies for therapeutic agent delivery into brain across the blood–brain barrier using receptor-mediated transcytosis. Chemical and Pharmaceutical Bulletin. 2020;68(4):316-25.
16. Yu Y, Pang Z, Lu W, Yin Q, Gao H, Jiang X. Self-assembled polymersomes conjugated with lactoferrin as novel drug carrier for brain delivery. Pharmaceutical research. 2012;29:83-96.

Bhumi Publishing, India
June 2025

HYPEREKPLEXIA:
A WINDOW INTO NEUROGENETIC STARTLE DISORDERS

Cyril Sajan*, Hemraj Singh Rajput
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Waghodia, Vadodara- 391760, India.
*Corresponding author E-mail: cyrilsajan97@gmail.com

Abstract:

Hyperekplexia, or Startle Disease, is a rare inherited neurological condition characterized by an excessive startle reaction to sudden sensory stimuli, persistent muscle stiffness, and increased muscle tone in newborns. The disorder typically follows either an autosomal dominant or recessive inheritance pattern and is most commonly linked to mutations in the GLRA1 gene, which encodes the alpha-1 subunit of the glycine receptor. Other associated genes include GLRB, SLC6A5, and GPHN. Clinically, patients often exhibit an exaggerated startle reaction to unexpected tactile or auditory triggers, accompanied by prolonged muscle rigidity that, in infants, can lead to breathing difficulties and even sudden death. Diagnosis is based on clinical evaluation, genetic testing, and electromyography, which reveals a characteristic extended burst of muscle activity following a stimulus. Treatment is centered on pharmacological management with clonazepam, which helps reduce symptoms by enhancing inhibitory neurotransmission. Supportive care is equally important to address potential complications, such as falls and respiratory issues. Early detection and a coordinated treatment approach are vital for minimizing complications and improving long-term outcomes.

Keywords: Hyperekplexia, Startle Disease, GLRA1 Gene, Exaggerated Startle Reflex, Neonatal Hypertonia, Glycine Receptor, Clonazepam, Genetic Testing, Electromyography, Sudden Infant Death.

Introduction:

Hyperekplexia, also referred to as Startle Disease, is a rare inherited neurological condition marked by an exaggerated startle response to unexpected sounds, touches, or even visual stimuli. First identified by Suhren and colleagues in 1966, it has since been recognized as a unique disorder among neurogenetic diseases. Typically, the condition becomes apparent in newborns or early infancy, manifesting as severe generalized muscle stiffness, pronounced startle reactions, and, in severe cases, episodes of breathing difficulties that can be life-threatening.[1]

The disorder is most often linked to genetic mutations affecting glycinergic neurotransmission, with the GLRA1 gene—which encodes the alpha-1 subunit of the glycine receptor—being the most commonly affected. Additional genes involved include GLRB,

SLC6A5, and GPHN, all of which play key roles in inhibitory signaling within the nervous system. Mutations in these genes disrupt normal function of glycine receptors in the spinal cord and brainstem, resulting in inadequate inhibition of motor neuron activity and, consequently, an excessive startle response.

Hyperekplexia can be inherited in both autosomal dominant and autosomal recessive patterns, though most inherited cases follow a dominant pattern. Sporadic cases can also arise without a clear family history. The condition is exceptionally rare, with an estimated prevalence of fewer than 1 in 1,000,000 live births; however, it may be underdiagnosed due to its resemblance to other neonatal disorders characterized by increased muscle tone.

Clinically, the hallmark features include a sudden, exaggerated muscle response to stimuli, often leading to stiffening and, in older children and adults, falls. In infants, generalized stiffness, feeding challenges, and respiratory problems are common presentations.

Early diagnosis is crucial, as pharmacological treatment—most often using clonazepam, which enhances inhibitory neurotransmission—can effectively alleviate symptoms and prevent serious complications. Genetic testing is an invaluable tool in confirming the diagnosis, providing guidance for family planning, and identifying carriers within affected families.

Epidemiology

Hyperekplexia, or Startle Disease, is an exceptionally rare neurogenetic disorder, with exact prevalence figures currently unknown but estimated to affect fewer than 1 in 1,000,000 live births. Due to its rarity and clinical similarities with other neonatal hypertonia disorders, it is likely underdiagnosed, especially in cases with sporadic or milder presentations.

Geographic Distribution

Cases of hyperekplexia have been documented across various regions worldwide, with no clear ethnic or regional concentration. Nonetheless, some founder mutations have been identified in specific populations, particularly within certain European groups, where GLRA1 gene mutations have been more frequently reported.

Inheritance Patterns

The disorder can be passed down through either autosomal dominant or autosomal recessive inheritance, with the dominant form being more commonly seen in familial clusters. Mutations in the GLRA1 gene account for approximately 80% of inherited cases. Other genes implicated in the disease include GLRB, SLC6A5, and GPHN. Additionally, sporadic cases arising from new (de novo) mutations have also been observed.[2]

Sex Distribution

Both males and females are equally affected, with no significant differences in prevalence between the sexes.

Etiology

Hyperekplexia (Startle Disease) is predominantly a genetic disorder arising from mutations in genes that code for key components of the glycinergic inhibitory system, which is essential for modulating reflexes and controlling startle responses, particularly within the spinal cord and brainstem.[3]

1. Mutations in the GLRA1 Gene

- The most frequently implicated gene is **GLRA1**, which encodes the alpha-1 subunit of the glycine receptor.
- Mutations in this gene disrupt receptor function by affecting its binding sites, channel gating, or the assembly of subunits. This leads to decreased inhibitory neurotransmission, a hallmark of hyperekplexia.
- Both autosomal dominant and autosomal recessive mutations have been reported in GLRA1, accounting for roughly 80% of familial cases.

2. Other Genetic Contributors

- **GLRB Gene:**
    - Codes for the beta subunit of the glycine receptor. Mutations in this gene can also lead to hyperekplexia and typically follow an autosomal recessive inheritance pattern.
- **SLC6A5 Gene:**
    - Encodes the presynaptic glycine transporter 2 (GlyT2), which is responsible for reabsorbing glycine from the synaptic cleft.
    - Mutations in SLC6A5 disrupt this reuptake process, thereby impairing inhibitory neurotransmission.
- **GPHN Gene:**
    - Encodes gephyrin, a key scaffolding protein at postsynaptic sites that clusters glycine receptors for effective neurotransmission.
    - Mutations in GPHN interfere with receptor positioning and function.

3. Pathophysiological Mechanism

- Mutations in these genes collectively lead to **deficient or dysfunctional glycinergic neurotransmission**, resulting in **exaggerated startle responses, generalized muscle stiffness, and impaired modulation of reflex pathways**.
- Without adequate glycine receptor function, the spinal cord and brainstem circuits fail to properly inhibit motor neuron activity, leading to sustained muscle contraction and heightened reflex sensitivity.

4. Sporadic and De Novo Mutations

- Although most cases are familial, **sporadic cases due to de novo mutations** have been reported, particularly in the GLRA1 gene.
- This emphasizes the need for genetic testing even in cases without a clear family history.

Pathophysiology

Hyperekplexia (Startle Disease) is driven by disrupted inhibitory signaling in the spinal cord and brainstem due to defects in the glycinergic system. This dysfunction stems from mutations in genes that encode key components of the glycine receptor complex or its associated regulatory proteins.[4] Glycine serves as the primary inhibitory neurotransmitter in these regions, playing an essential role in controlling motor neuron activity and modulating reflex responses.

1. Glycine Receptor Dysfunction

- The glycine receptor (GlyR) is a ligand-gated chloride channel crucial for rapid inhibitory neurotransmission.
- This receptor is a pentameric structure typically formed by alpha-1 (**GLRA1**) and beta (**GLRB**) subunits.
- Mutations in **GLRA1** often cause structural or functional abnormalities, leading to reduced chloride ion flow or improper receptor assembly.
- Mutations in **GLRB** disrupt the anchoring and stabilization of the receptor at postsynaptic sites, impairing its function.

2. Glycine Reuptake and Receptor Clustering Defects

- Mutations in the **SLC6A5** gene compromise the function of the glycine transporter 2 (GlyT2), which is responsible for clearing glycine from the synaptic cleft and recycling it into presynaptic terminals.
    - Loss of GlyT2 function results in depleted presynaptic glycine, reducing inhibitory signaling.
- Mutations in **GPHN**, which encodes the scaffolding protein gephyrin, interfere with the proper clustering and stabilization of glycine receptors at the postsynaptic membrane, further weakening inhibitory neurotransmission.

3. Neurophysiological Consequences

- These combined defects lead to a reduction in inhibitory postsynaptic potentials (IPSPs) in the spinal cord and brainstem circuits that normally regulate reflex activity.
- This results in an exaggerated startle response, where sensory stimuli overly excite motor neurons, triggering sudden, sustained muscle contractions.
- In neonates, this manifests as increased muscle tone, generalized stiffness, and potentially life-threatening apnea spells due to transient laryngeal spasms or whole-body rigidity.

- In older children and adults, the startle reflex remains exaggerated, often causing falls or social embarrassment, though generalized stiffness often lessens with age.

4. Electrophysiological Features

- Electromyography (EMG) studies in affected individuals typically reveal a prolonged burst of muscle activity in response to startle stimuli, reflecting the failure of glycinergic inhibition within motor pathways.

Clinical Presentation

Hyperekplexia (Startle Disease) often presents with a distinct, dramatic set of symptoms that typically emerge during the neonatal period or early infancy, although milder forms may only become evident later in childhood or adulthood. [5] The defining features include an exaggerated startle reflex, increased muscle tone in newborns, and widespread muscle stiffness, all of which stem from disrupted glycinergic neurotransmission in the spinal cord and brainstem.

1. Presentation in Newborns

- **Generalized Stiffness:**
  - Noted at birth, infants often display a marked rigidity of the limbs and trunk.
  - Movement of the limbs may be restricted or difficult due to the stiffness.
- **Heightened Startle Reflex:**
  - Triggered by sudden touch, sounds, or light.
  - The reaction is abrupt, forceful, and can cause a full-body stiffening, sometimes leading to falls (especially in older children).
- **Breathing and Cyanosis Issues:**
  - In severe cases, the intense muscle stiffening can cause temporary episodes of breath-holding or cyanosis, raising the risk of sudden infant death.
- **Feeding Challenges:**
  - Stiffness and poor coordination of the sucking and swallowing reflexes can make feeding difficult.

2. Symptoms in Children and Adults

- **Ongoing Exaggerated Startle:**
  - While the generalized stiffness often lessens after infancy, the heightened startle response usually persists into adulthood.
  - Sudden triggers can cause falls due to the simultaneous contraction of flexor and extensor muscles.
- **Falls Triggered by Startle:**
  - Particularly concerning in older children and adults, with an increased risk of injury.

- **Consciousness Maintained:**
    - Unlike fainting or seizure-related episodes, these startle responses do not lead to loss of consciousness.

3. Neurological Profile

- **Typical Cognitive Development:**
    - Most children demonstrate normal intellectual abilities, which helps distinguish hyperekplexia from other disorders like cerebral palsy.
- **Normal Motor Milestones:**
    - Despite early muscle stiffness, children typically achieve expected motor development with appropriate care.

4. Other Clinical Features

- **Sleep-Related Jerks:**
    - Some individuals experience benign muscle jerks during sleep.
- **Anxiety and Social Concerns:**
    - The unpredictable nature of the startle response can cause social embarrassment, leading to anxiety or social withdrawal in older children and adults.

Diagnosis

The diagnosis of Hyperekplexia (Startle Disease) relies on a combination of clinical evaluation, electrophysiological testing, and genetic analysis. Early detection is crucial to initiate appropriate interventions and prevent complications such as falls, feeding challenges, and in severe cases, apnea that can lead to sudden infant death.[6]

1. Clinical Evaluation

- **Key Features:**
    - Generalized muscle stiffness at birth, characterized by increased tone and resistance to passive movement.
    - Exaggerated startle response triggered by sudden tactile, auditory, or visual stimuli.
    - Prolonged muscle contractions following a startle, which can cause falls but without loss of consciousness.
    - Normal cognitive development, helping differentiate it from other neonatal hypertonia syndromes.
- **Response to Handling:**
    - The “head-retraction reflex” (HRR), where tapping the tip of the nose triggers a backward head jerk, is often used as a simple bedside screening tool.

2. Electrophysiological Testing

- **Electromyography (EMG):**
  - Reveals a characteristic prolonged burst of muscle activity in response to tactile or auditory stimuli.
  - Unlike the brief duration of a typical startle reflex, patients show sustained activation of both agonist and antagonist muscles.
- **Brainstem Auditory Evoked Potentials (BAEPs):**
  - Usually normal, which helps rule out other disorders involving the brainstem.

3. Genetic Testing

- **Molecular Studies:**
  - Testing for mutations in the GLRA1 gene is the first step, as it is the most common cause in familial cases.
  - Depending on the presentation and family history, testing may also include GLRB, SLC6A5, and GPHN genes.
  - Identifying a causative mutation confirms the diagnosis, enables family counseling, and distinguishes hyperekplexia from other similar disorders.

4. Differential Diagnosis

- **Other Causes of Neonatal Hypertonia:**
  - Includes conditions like spastic cerebral palsy, stiff-person syndrome, severe neonatal hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy, and metabolic disorders.
  - Unlike these, hyperekplexia typically preserves cognitive function and shows normal findings on brain imaging.
- **Seizure Disorders:**
  - Myoclonic epilepsy can resemble startle responses but usually presents with EEG abnormalities and may involve altered consciousness.

5. Imaging Studies

- **Brain MRI:**
  - Generally normal, but recommended to exclude structural abnormalities or other potential causes.

Pharmacological Management

Pharmacologic therapy for Hyperekplexia (Startle Disease) is centered on alleviating symptoms, particularly the pronounced startle response and generalized muscle stiffness. [7] Although no treatment currently corrects the underlying genetic defect, medications are used to enhance central nervous system inhibitory pathways to mitigate symptom severity.

1. Primary Therapy: Clonazepam

- **Mechanism of Action:**
  - Clonazepam, a benzodiazepine, enhances gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA)-mediated inhibition in the central nervous system, helping to offset the inadequate glycinergic inhibition that characterizes hyperekplexia.
- **Dosage:**
  - For infants, the starting dose is typically 0.05–0.1 mg/kg/day, divided into multiple doses and adjusted based on clinical response and tolerance.
  - For older children and adults, typical dosages range from 0.5–2 mg/day, with adjustments as needed.
- **Clinical Benefits:**
  - Helps control exaggerated startle responses and reduces muscle stiffness.
  - Enhances quality of life and lowers the risk of falls and injury.

2. Alternative Pharmacologic Options

- **Other Benzodiazepines (e.g., Diazepam):**
  - May be considered when clonazepam is unavailable or poorly tolerated, but generally less effective.
- **Carbamazepine:**
  - Occasionally used based on anecdotal evidence; not recommended as a first-line therapy due to inconsistent outcomes.
- **Valproic Acid:**
  - Seldom used but may be considered in patients with significant myoclonus when clonazepam fails to provide adequate relief.

3. Acute Management of Apnea Episodes

- **Sensory Stimulation:**
  - Tactile or auditory stimulation can sometimes terminate apnea spells in infants.
- **Respiratory Support:**
  - In severe cases, temporary mechanical ventilation may be necessary.
- **Medication:**
  - While no specific medication is indicated for acute apnea, chronic use of clonazepam can reduce the frequency of these episodes.

4. Monitoring and Safety

- **Sedation and Drowsiness:**
  - Common side effects of clonazepam, particularly in infants and young children, requiring cautious titration.

- **Tolerance Development:**
    - Long-term use can lead to tolerance; periodic reassessment of the treatment plan is advisable.
- **Withdrawal Concerns:**
    - Abrupt discontinuation should be avoided; gradual tapering is essential to prevent withdrawal symptoms.

5. Investigational Approaches

- Ongoing research is exploring gene therapies and novel drugs targeting glycine receptors. These treatments remain experimental and are not yet approved for routine clinical use.

Non-Pharmacological Treatment

Although medications remain central to treating Hyperekplexia (Startle Disease), a range of supportive, non-pharmacological strategies is essential to ensure safety, enhance daily functioning, and address complications.[8] These approaches are particularly important for infants and young children who face greater risks from frequent startle episodes and associated muscle stiffness.

1. Environmental Safety and Injury Prevention

- **Protective Measures:**
    - Modify the home environment to eliminate sharp edges or hard surfaces that could cause injuries during sudden falls.
    - Use helmets or soft padding for children who experience frequent falls.
- **Stimulus Control:**
    - Reduce exposure to sudden loud noises or unexpected physical contact that might provoke a startle reaction.
    - Implement gradual sound exposure and soft lighting in the home to limit triggering stimuli.

2. Feeding and Nutritional Support

- **Feeding Strategies:**
    - Infants often have difficulty feeding due to generalized stiffness and interruption of the suck-swallow reflex by startle responses.
    - Use slow-paced feeding, appropriate positioning, and frequent burping to reduce the risk of aspiration.
- **Therapy Involvement:**
    - A referral to a speech-language pathologist can help address feeding and swallowing challenges, ensuring safe and effective nutrition.

3. Physical and Occupational Therapy

- **Motor Development:**
  - Early physical therapy can help promote normal motor milestones and reduce muscle stiffness through stretching and range-of-motion exercises.
- **Functional Skills:**
  - Occupational therapy can enhance fine motor development and help children develop strategies to cope with startle responses in everyday tasks.

4. Education and Psychosocial Support

- **Caregiver Education:**
  - Educate families on the nature of the disorder, safety measures, and the importance of therapy and medication adherence.
- **Anxiety Management:**
  - Older children and adults may experience social anxiety due to unpredictable startle responses; psychological counseling or behavioral therapy can help manage these concerns.
- **Support Networks:**
  - Connecting with patient advocacy groups and support organizations can reduce isolation and provide practical guidance for families.

5. Emergency Preparedness

- **Managing Apnea Episodes:**
  - Teach parents and caregivers how to use gentle tactile stimulation to interrupt apnea episodes in infants.
  - Educate families on recognizing signs of respiratory distress and seeking immediate medical attention.
- **Coordinated Care:**
  - A multidisciplinary team—including neurologists, pediatricians, therapists, and genetic counselors—ensures that all aspects of the disorder are addressed, providing comprehensive support.[9]

Role of the Pharmacist

Pharmacists are integral members of the multidisciplinary team caring for patients with Hyperekplexia (Startle Disease).[10] Given the disease's rarity, complex medication regimens, and potential complications, pharmacists provide vital support in managing therapy, educating patients and families, ensuring safety, and coordinating comprehensive care.

1. Medication Management

- **Dosing and Adjustments:**
  - Guide the initiation and titration of clonazepam, the primary therapy, while monitoring for effectiveness and tolerability.
  - Customize doses based on age, weight, and clinical presentation, whether in infants, children, or adults.
- **Alternative Treatments:**
  - Evaluate the suitability of other therapies, such as additional benzodiazepines, if clonazepam is poorly tolerated or ineffective.
- **Drug Interactions:**
  - Assess for potential interactions with other medications and recommend dose adjustments as necessary.

2. Monitoring for Adverse Reactions

- **Sedation and Drowsiness:**
  - Educate patients and caregivers to recognize signs of excessive sedation and provide advice on safe activities (e.g., avoiding driving or risky activities in older children and adults).
- **Tolerance and Dependence:**
  - Monitor for signs of medication tolerance with long-term use and stress the importance of gradual dose reduction to prevent withdrawal symptoms.
- **Respiratory Monitoring:**
  - Counsel caregivers to watch for signs of breathing problems, particularly in infants who may be at higher risk of respiratory depression when taking higher doses or combining with other sedatives.

3. Patient and Caregiver Education

- **Medication Adherence:**
  - Highlight the importance of consistent medication administration to maintain symptom control and reduce the risk of falls or injuries.
- **Administration Guidance:**
  - Provide instructions on proper administration methods, including guidance for liquid formulations needed in infants.
- **Managing Side Effects:**
  - Educate families on common side effects such as drowsiness and offer advice on managing potential feeding challenges.

4. Care Coordination and Advocacy

- **Team Collaboration:**
  - Work alongside neurologists, pediatricians, genetic specialists, therapists, and other healthcare providers to deliver integrated care tailored to the patient's needs.
  - Contribute to case discussions, adjusting therapy based on treatment response and evolving clinical circumstances.
- **Medication Access:**
  - Help families navigate the process of obtaining medications, including insurance approvals, and connect them with patient assistance programs for costly therapies.

5. Support for Genetic Counseling

- While pharmacists do not directly provide genetic counseling, they can emphasize the importance of genetic testing for family planning and carrier screening and refer families to appropriate genetic counseling services.[11]

Conclusion:

Hyperekplexia (Startle Disease) is a rare, inherited neurological disorder characterized by heightened startle reflexes, muscle stiffness in newborns, and sudden episodes of muscle rigidity, all resulting from defects in the glycinergic neurotransmission system. Early and accurate diagnosis is essential to begin appropriate treatment with clonazepam—the first-line therapy—which can greatly reduce symptoms and minimize the risk of falls, breathing problems, and other injuries.

Management of Hyperekplexia requires a comprehensive, team-based approach that integrates both medication and supportive strategies to foster development, maintain safety, and educate families. Pharmacists are vital members of this team, ensuring proper medication management, monitoring for potential side effects, educating patients and caregivers, and facilitating care coordination.

While gene therapy and other targeted treatments are still being explored, current approaches that enhance inhibitory neurotransmission, combined with supportive care, can meaningfully improve the lives of affected patients and their families. Ongoing research into the disorder's genetic and molecular underpinnings offers hope for future therapies that may directly target the root cause of this challenging disease.[12]

References:

1. Suhren O, Bruyn GW, Tuynman JA. Hyperekplexia: a hereditary startle syndrome. J Neurol Sci. 1966;3(4):577–605.
2. Rees MI. Hyperekplexia: a molecular disorder of glycinergic neurotransmission. Muscle Nerve. 2011;44(5):653–660.

3. Chung SK, Vanbellinghen JF, Mullins JG, Robinson A, Hantke J, Hammond CL, *et al.* Pathophysiological mechanisms of dominant and recessive GLRA1 mutations in hyperekplexia. J Neurosci. 2010;30(28):9612–9620.
4. Rees MI, Harvey K, Pearce BR, Chung SK, Duguid IC, Thomas P, *et al.* Mutations in the gene encoding GlyT2 (SLC6A5) define a presynaptic component of human startle disease. Nat Genet. 2006;38(7):801–806.
5. Bode A, Wood SE, Mullins JG, Rees MI, Traka MH, Frater J, *et al.* New insights into hyperekplexia: GLRB mutations and phenotypic variability. Neurology. 2013;80(7):679–686.
6. Rajendra S, Lynch JW, Schofield PR. The glycine receptor. Pharmacol Ther. 1997;73(2):121–146.
7. Thomas RH, Chung SK, Wood SE, Cushion TD, Drew CJG, Hammond CL, *et al.* Genotype-phenotype correlations in hyperekplexia: apnoeas, learning difficulties and speech delay. Brain. 2013;136(Pt 10):3085–3095.
8. Bormann J. The 'ABC' of GABA receptors. Trends Pharmacol Sci. 2000;21(1):16–19.
9. Lynch JW. Molecular structure and function of the glycine receptor chloride channel. Physiol Rev. 2004;84(4):1051–1095.
10. Tijssen MA, Rees MI. Hyperekplexia. In: Adam MP, Everman DB, Mirzaa GM, Pagon RA, Wallace SE, Bean LJH, et al., editors. GeneReviews® [Internet]. Seattle (WA): University of Washington, Seattle; 1993–2023. Updated 2019 Apr 18.
11. Chihara K, Takahashi K, Nakamura Y, Araki K, Kuwada M, Nakamura K, *et al.* A case of startle disease: Clinical and electrophysiological study. Brain Dev. 1996;18(4):293–295.
12. Tijssen MAJ, Rees MI. Hyperekplexia: an update on pathogenesis, clinical features, and treatment. Brain Dev. 2012;34(8):629–636.

PLANT-BASED ANTI-ANEMIC AGENTS: PRECLINICAL EVIDENCE AND THERAPEUTIC PROSPECTS

Kinjal P. Patel*[1], Dipti Gohil[2], Milap Patel[3]

[1]Department of Pharmacy,

Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Piparia, Vadodara-391760, Gujarat

[2]Ramanbhai Patel College of Pharmacy, Charotar University of Science and Technology (CHARUSAT), CHARUSAT Campus, Changa 388421, India

*Corresponding author E-mail: kinjalpatel54@gmail.com

Abstract:

Anemia, a global public health issue, is characterized by decreased hemoglobin concentration or red blood cell count, leading to impaired oxygen delivery to tissues. Nutritional deficiencies, chronic diseases, blood loss, and malabsorption are key contributors, with women of reproductive age and children being most vulnerable. Conventional iron therapies, while effective, often cause gastrointestinal side effects and poor patient compliance. This has prompted interest in herbal alternatives that offer safer, well-tolerated, and multifaceted approaches to anemia treatment. Several medicinal plants—*Solanum aethiopicum*, *Justicia secunda*, *Moringa oleifera*, *Beta vulgaris* (beetroot), and *Boerhaavia diffusa*—have demonstrated significant hematopoietic activity in preclinical models, particularly against phenylhydrazine-induced anemia. These plant extracts enhance hemoglobin synthesis, red blood cell production, and improve iron metabolism, often with additional benefits such as antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, and organ-protective effects. The reviewed evidence underscores the potential of phytotherapeutic agents in complementing or replacing synthetic iron therapies, warranting further clinical validation and standardization for safe integration into anemia management protocols.

Keywords: Anemia; Iron Deficiency, Hematopoiesis; Phenylhydrazine-Induced Anemia.

Introduction:

Anemia is a condition characterized by a reduction in the number of red blood cells (RBCs) or a decrease in hemoglobin concentration, impairing the blood's capacity to transport oxygen to tissues. Hemoglobin, a protein within RBCs, is responsible for delivering oxygen from the lungs to the body's cells. When hemoglobin levels drop, the resulting oxygen deficiency, or hypoxia, can lead to a variety of health complications due to the body's dependence on oxygen for cellular functions.[1]Anemia can develop gradually and may remain asymptomatic in its early stages. When symptoms do appear, they are often nonspecific and include fatigue, weakness, shortness of breath, and in more severe cases, increased heart rate as the body attempts to compensate for reduced oxygen delivery.[2] Women of reproductive age (14–45 years) and children are particularly vulnerable to anemia due to higher physiological demands during

menstruation, pregnancy, and lactation, which involve significant iron loss.[3] The development of healthy red blood cells and hemoglobin synthesis requires adequate intake of iron, folic acid, vitamin B12, and other micronutrients such as copper, zinc, magnesium, cobalt, and molybdenum, along with essential amino acids.[4] Nutritional anemia is often linked to poor dietary habits, food insecurity, and cultural practices. Skipping meals, insufficient intake of fruits and vegetables, and frequent consumption of processed or junk food—rich in phytates that inhibit iron absorption—further contribute to this condition.[5] To mitigate anemia, diets must be enriched with iron-rich and nutrient-dense foods such as red meat, fish, tofu, eggs, fortified cereals, and dark leafy vegetables. Legumes, nuts, and pulses provide additional vitamins, while citrus fruits enhance iron absorption through their vitamin C content.[6] Reducing the intake of junk food and improving dietary patterns can significantly lower the risk of anemia. Regular health check-ups are also essential for early diagnosis and effective management.

Types of Anemia[7-12]

Anemia Type	Description	Causes	Treatment
Microcytic Anemia	Red blood cells are smaller than normal due to low hemoglobin	• Iron-deficiency anemia: Due to blood loss, poor iron intake, poor iron absorption, or pregnancy • Sideroblastic anemia: Bone marrow can't produce healthy red blood cells • Thalassemia: Inherited blood disorder • Lead toxicity: Disrupted hemoglobin production from lead exposure	• Iron supplements, dietary changes, vitamin C • Vitamin B6 (for mild sideroblastic anemia) • Bone marrow transplant or blood transfusions (for severe cases of sideroblastic anemia)
Normocytic Anemia	Red blood cells are normal in size, but their count is low	• Anemia of chronic disease: Due to chronic inflammation from autoimmune conditions, infections, cancer • Blood loss: From injury, heavy periods, surgery • Hemolytic anemia: Rapid breakdown of red blood cells • Aplastic anemia: Stem cell failure in the bone marrow • Bone marrow disorders: Myelofibrosis, leukemia, cancer metastases	• Treatment depends on the underlying cause: managing chronic disease, treating infections, addressing blood loss, or bone marrow treatments

Macrocytic Anemia	Red blood cells are larger than normal	• Megaloblastic anemia: Due to vitamin B12 or folate deficiency Nonmegaloblastic anemia: • Due to conditions like hypothyroidism, alcohol use, liver disease, hereditary spherocytosis, myelodysplastic syndrome	• Vitamin B12 and folate supplements (for megaloblastic anemia) • B12 injections (for pernicious anemia) • Treating the nonmegaloblastic anemia cases

Symptoms

Anemia manifests through a range of symptoms that often reflect the body's diminished capacity to deliver oxygen efficiently to tissues. One of the most noticeable signs is paleness of the skin, particularly evident in the face, palms, and inner eyelids. Individuals with anemia frequently experience shortness of breath, especially during physical exertion, due to reduced oxygen supply. Dizziness and persistent headaches are common, often accompanied by easy fatigue and a general loss of energy, which may interfere with daily activities. Some people report clumsiness and stiffness in their arms and legs, while others experience a pins-and-needles sensation, especially in the hands and feet, which may result from nerve involvement or poor circulation. In more severe cases, anemia may cause chest pain, as the heart works harder to compensate for low oxygen levels, potentially leading to a faster or irregular heartbeat. These symptoms may vary in intensity depending on the severity and type of anemia, underscoring the importance of timely diagnosis and treatment.

Risk Factors

Several risk factors contribute to the development of anemia, many of which are linked to nutrition, physiology, or underlying health conditions. A diet lacking essential nutrients such as iron, folate, or vitamin B12 is one of the most common causes of anemia, especially in individuals with poor dietary habits or restricted food intake.[13] Women of reproductive age are particularly vulnerable due to heavy menstrual bleeding, which can lead to significant iron loss.[14] During pregnancy, the body’s demand for iron and other nutrients increases substantially, and without proper supplementation, anemia is a frequent complication.[15]Advancing age also increases susceptibility, particularly in individuals over 65, who may experience nutritional deficiencies, chronic illnesses, or gastrointestinal blood loss.[16] Digestive disorders like Crohn’s disease and celiac disease can impair nutrient absorption, further elevating the risk. Chronic conditions such as cancer, kidney disease, liver disorders, and autoimmune diseases often contribute to anemia either through inflammation or direct impairment of red blood cell production.[17-19] Environmental and lifestyle factors, such as chronic alcohol consumption and

repeated exposure to toxic substances, may also damage bone marrow function, thereby increasing the likelihood of anemia.[20,21]

Diagnosis

The diagnosis of anemia begins with a thorough clinical evaluation, including a detailed medical history and physical examination to identify symptoms and possible underlying causes. Laboratory tests play a crucial role in confirming anemia and determining its type and severity. The primary test is a complete blood count (CBC), which measures hemoglobin concentration, hematocrit (the proportion of red blood cells in blood), and red blood cell count. Additional parameters such as mean corpuscular volume (MCV) help classify anemia as microcytic, normocytic, or macrocytic, guiding further investigation. To identify the cause of anemia, iron studies including serum ferritin, serum iron, total iron-binding capacity (TIBC), and transferrin saturation are often performed to assess iron status. Vitamin B12 and folate levels may be checked to rule out deficiencies causing macrocytic anemia. In cases where hemolysis or bone marrow disorders are suspected, reticulocyte counts, peripheral blood smear, and bone marrow examination may be necessary. Other tests such as stool occult blood tests, renal function tests, and inflammatory markers can help detect bleeding sources or chronic diseases contributing to anemia. Accurate diagnosis is essential for selecting appropriate treatment and managing the underlying cause effectively.[13,16]

Need for Herbal Formulations in Anemia Treatment

Iron deficiency anemia (IDA) is commonly treated with oral iron supplements, which are widely prescribed to replenish iron stores and correct anemia. However, conventional iron therapy is often associated with adverse gastrointestinal effects, including constipation, abdominal discomfort, nausea, bloating, and reduced patient compliance.[22] These side effects limit the tolerability and effectiveness of long-term treatment, especially in vulnerable populations such as pregnant women and the elderly. Given these challenges, there is a growing interest in exploring herbal remedies as complementary or alternative options for managing anemia. Herbal formulations offer a natural and potentially safer approach with better gastrointestinal tolerance. Many traditional herbs are rich in bioavailable iron and also contain other hematinic compounds such as flavonoids, polyphenols, vitamin C, and tannins, which can enhance iron absorption and promote erythropoiesis (red blood cell production).[23]Additionally, herbal medicines may address underlying causes of anemia, such as inflammation or malabsorption, and support overall health and nutritional balance. The integration of plant-based therapies into anemia management could thus reduce dependency on synthetic supplements and improve patient adherence while minimizing side effects.[24]

1. *Solanum aethiopicum*

Solanum aethiopicum, commonly known as African eggplant, has been extensively used in traditional medicine for treating various conditions, including diabetes, hypertension, and anemia. Among its various parts, the leaves are particularly valued in managing anemia, especially in pregnant women, due to their high nutritional content. The therapeutic potential of *S. aethiopicum* is attributed to its rich composition of phenolic compounds, antioxidants, and essential minerals; however, some phenolics may exhibit mild toxicity at high concentrations.[25] Experimental studies using phenylhydrazine (PHZ) to induce anemia in rats have demonstrated that treatment with *S. aethiopicum* leaf extracts significantly improves hematological parameters. These improvements suggest potent hematopoietic activity, likely due to the extract's capacity to enhance red blood cell synthesis and mitigate oxidative damage.[26] Furthermore, the extract showed no signs of acute toxicity or behavioral abnormalities in test animals, indicating a high safety profile with an LD50 exceeding 5000 mg/kg.In addition to hematological benefits, *S. aethiopicum* also exhibited antihyperlipidemic activity by reducing total cholesterol and elevating high-density lipoprotein (HDL) levels. Biochemical analyses revealed that the extract supports liver and kidney health, as evidenced by reduced levels of hepatic and renal markers, including urea, creatinine, and liver enzymes. Histological examination further confirmed the protective effects of the extract on liver and kidney tissues by preventing PHZ-induced necrosis .[26,27]

2. *Justicia secunda*

Justicia secunda, a plant widely recognized in traditional medicine, has shown significant hematopoietic potential in experimental models of anemia. In studies involving phenylhydrazine-induced anemic mice, leaf extracts of J. secunda prepared using various solvents—including ethanol, n-hexane, ethyl acetate, and n-butanol—were found to be rich in diverse bioactive compounds such as flavonoids, alkaloids, saponins, and tannins. Among these, the n-hexane extract exhibited the most potent hematinic activity, markedly improving key hematological parameters such as hemoglobin (Hb) concentration and packed cell volume (PCV). These improvements were not only statistically significant but also superior to those achieved by standard anti-anemic therapies like ferrous sulfate and vitamin B_{12}. The observed efficacy suggests that J. secunda, particularly in its non-polar extract form, holds considerable promise as a plant-based therapeutic agent for anemia. Its activity is likely attributed to both its iron content and synergistic action of multiple phytochemicals that support erythropoiesis and enhance iron metabolism. Further research is warranted to validate these findings, identify the specific active constituents, and assess its therapeutic potential in human population.[28] The median effective dose (ED_{50}) of *Justicia secunda* extract was calculated to be 8.3 ± 3.2 mg/kg, demonstrating potent activity at relatively low doses. Importantly, acute toxicity studies revealed that the extract

was non-toxic up to 2000 mg/kg, indicating a wide safety margin (>240) and suggesting its suitability for therapeutic applications. Within just six days of administration**,** hematological parameters—including hemoglobin concentration and packed cell volume—were significantly restored, highlighting the rapid onset of hematinic action**.** Chemical analysis revealed an iron content of 26.6 mg per 100 g of extract, which likely contributes to its efficacy in hemoglobin synthesis and red blood cell regeneration**.** The presence of bioavailable iron alongside a diverse array of bioactive phytochemicals in medicinal plants can potentially work together to enhance erythropoiesis and optimize iron metabolism through synergistic interactions. These combined effects may offer advantages over traditional iron supplementation by improving absorption, reducing side effects, and supporting overall blood health. Although preclinical studies have shown encouraging results, demonstrating improved hematological outcomes compared to standard iron treatments, there remains a critical need for more in-depth research. Future investigations should focus on isolating and identifying the specific active compounds responsible for these benefits, elucidating their underlying biological mechanisms, and conducting rigorous clinical trials to confirm their safety and effectiveness in human populations. This comprehensive approach will be vital for integrating such phytotherapeutic agents into mainstream anemia management strategies.[28,29]

3. *Moringa oleifera*

In a study involving 15 Wistar rats, anemia was induced using phenylhydrazine, a compound known to generate toxic aryl and hydroxyl radicals that impair hemoglobin's oxygen-binding ability and cause oxidative damage to red blood cells.[30,31]The rats were divided into three groups: a control group and two treatment groups receiving different doses of *Moringa oleifera* leaf extract. After 28 days, blood samples revealed that the treated groups showed significant improvements in red blood cell (RBC) count, hemoglobin concentration, and packed cell volume (PCV) compared to the untreated anemic group. These hematological improvements are likely due to the phytochemical constituents of *Moringa oleifera*, including essential vitamins and minerals that support hematopoiesis. Notably, the extract appears to enhance iron absorption—critical for hemoglobin synthesis and erythropoiesis in organs such as the bone marrow and kidneys.[32] Additionally, normal levels of white blood cells, lymphocytes, and platelets in treated animals suggest that *Moringa oleifera* supports overall hematologic stability beyond iron metabolism.

4. Beetroot

Beetroot (*Beta vulgaris*) is widely recognized for its medicinal benefits, particularly in improving hematological health. In a study evaluating its effects on phenylhydrazine-induced anemia in Wistar rats, both low (100 mg/kg) and high (400 mg/kg) doses of ethanolic beetroot extract significantly improved red blood cell (RBC) parameters. While the anemic and low-dose

groups showed a 38% decrease in RBC count compared to controls, both treatment groups exhibited marked increases in RBC counts—by 68% and 87% respectively—relative to the anemic group, indicating dose-dependent hematopoietic effects.[33]The observed decline in packed cell volume (PCV) and hemoglobin (Hb) in the anemic group was attributed to phenylhydrazine's oxidative damage to erythrocytes. However, beetroot treatment reversed these changes, with the high-dose group showing the greatest restoration in PCV and Hb levels.[34,35] These results align with previous studies demonstrating beetroot's erythropoietic properties, likely due to its high folate content which enhances iron metabolism and hemoglobin synthesis.[36,37]Notably, beetroot had a more pronounced effect under anemic conditions, suggesting that certain physiological responses during anemia may amplify its hematinic activity. This highlights beetroot's potential as a natural, supportive therapy in the management of iron-deficiency anemia.

5. Boerhaavia diffusa

Boerhaavia diffusa, commonly known as "Punarnava" in Ayurvedic medicine, is a herbaceous plant from the Nyctaginaceae family found in tropical and subtropical regions. Traditionally, both the roots and the entire plant have been used to treat various ailments, including jaundice, asthma, urinary disorders, and anemia. Its leaves are also consumed as a vegetable in some regions.[38] The plant has been shown to be safe, with acute toxicity studies reporting no mortality at doses up to 2000 mg/kg, indicating an LD_{50} above 2 g/kg. In a controlled study, phenylhydrazine-induced anemic rats were administered methanolic and aqueous extracts of *B. diffusa* to evaluate hematological recovery. Thirty-six rats were divided into seven groups, and treatment outcomes were compared to a standard anti-anemic drug, Orofer. The extracts led to significant improvements in body weight, red blood cell (RBC) count, hemoglobin concentration, and packed cell volume (PCV) in a dose-dependent manner. Additionally, elevated reticulocyte levels suggested enhanced erythropoiesis.[38-40] These promising results support the potential role of *Boerhaavia diffusa* as a natural therapeutic agent for anemia management.

6. *Curcuma longa*

Among the medicinal plants exhibiting significant anti-anemic potential, *Curcuma longa* (turmeric) has gained attention for its ability to improve hematological parameters in experimental models. A study evaluating its efficacy in Wistar rats demonstrated that both the aqueous juice (squeeze) and ethanol extract of turmeric rhizomes at a dose of 200 mg/kg body weight led to a substantial increase in hemoglobin concentration and erythrocyte count. These preparations, rich in polar phytochemicals, were effective in enhancing hematopoiesis. Notably, the turmeric ethanol extract showed superior results compared to the juice, with hemoglobin levels reaching 13.92 g/dL, erythrocytes at $7.84 \times 10^6/\mu L$, and hematocrit values at 45.24%. In

comparison, the turmeric juice group recorded values of 12.62 g/dL hemoglobin**,** 7.32 × 10^6/μL erythrocytes, and 40.26% hematocrit. Although both preparations improved hematological indices, the ethanol extract exhibited greater efficacy, albeit not surpassing the positive control. These findings support turmeric's role as a natural hematinic agent, warranting further investigation to elucidate its active constituents and potential clinical applications in anemia management.[41]

Conclusion:

The growing global burden of anemia—particularly iron-deficiency anemia—highlights the urgent need for effective, affordable, and sustainable therapeutic strategies. While conventional iron supplementation continues to serve as a frontline treatment, its frequent gastrointestinal side effects, variable absorption rates, and poor patient adherence limit its long-term effectiveness, especially in vulnerable populations such as children, pregnant women, and the elderly. This has spurred increasing interest in plant-based alternatives that not only replenish iron stores but also support broader physiological functions. Medicinal plants such as *Solanum aethiopicum*, *Justicia secunda*, *Moringa oleifera*, *Beta vulgaris* (beetroot), and *Boerhaavia diffusa* have shown significant promise in preclinical models of anemia, particularly those induced by phenylhydrazine. These botanicals are rich in bioavailable iron, essential vitamins, flavonoids, and other phytoconstituents that synergistically promote hematopoiesis, enhance erythropoietin activity, improve iron absorption, and combat oxidative stress. Additionally, their protective effects on the liver, kidneys, and bone marrow suggest a multifaceted approach to managing the underlying causes and complications of anemia. Incorporating such herbal formulations into mainstream treatment regimens could offer a more holistic and patient-friendly alternative to synthetic iron supplements. Their natural origin, combined with a favorable safety profile and potential for nutritional enrichment, make them especially suitable for long-term use in populations with chronic or recurrent anemia. Nonetheless, despite encouraging experimental evidence, these phytotherapeutic agents must undergo rigorous clinical evaluation to validate their efficacy, determine optimal dosing, and ensure standardization of active constituents. Regulatory oversight, quality control, and integration into evidence-based guidelines will be essential to ensure their safe and effective use on a wider scale. Ultimately, bridging traditional knowledge with modern pharmacological research may open new avenues for anemia management that are both scientifically sound and culturally appropriate.

References:

1. Cappellini MD, Musallam KM, Taher AT. Iron deficiency anaemia revisited. J Intern Med. 2020;287(2):153-170.
2. Zimmermann MB, Hurrell RF. Nutritional iron deficiency. Lancet. 2007;370(9586):511–20.

3. Abbaspour N, Hurrell R, Kelishadi R. Review on iron and its importance for human health. J Res Med Sci. 2014;19(2):164-174.
4. Ghosh S. Exploring socio-cultural dimensions of iron deficiency anemia among women in India. Asia Pac J Clin Nutr. 2009;18(3):407-414.
5. Haas JD, Brownlie T. Iron deficiency and reduced work capacity: a critical review of the research to determine a causal relationship. J Nutr. 2001;131(2S-2):676S–688S.
6. Hercberg S, Rouaud C. Nutritional anaemia. Children in the Tropics. 1981(133):1-36.
7. Kane SR, Hill ML, Kasting JF, Kopparapu RK, Quintana EV, Barclay T, Batalha NM, Borucki WJ, Ciardi DR, Haghighipour N, Hinkel NR. A catalog of Kepler habitable zone exoplanet candidates. The Astrophysical Journal. 2016 Sep 30;830(1):1.
8. Jangjoo S, Hosseini L. The prevalence of iron-deficiency anemia in non-pregnant women of reproductive age [14–45] with anemia in Marvdasht's Shahid Motahari Hospital in 2012–2013. Electron J Biol. 2016;12:1-7.
9. Schrier SL. Etiology and diagnosis of the anemia of chronic disease (anemia of inflammation). UpToDate. 2023.
10. Balci YI, Karabulut A, Gürses D, Cövüt IE. Evaluation of anemia in children and adolescents: A single center experience. J Pediatr Hematol Oncol. 2012;34(7):e307–11.
11. Carmel R. Pernicious anemia: the expected findings of very low serum cobalamin levels, anemia, and macrocytosis are often lacking. Arch Intern Med. 1988;148(8):1712–4.
12. Green R, Datta Mitra A. Megaloblastic anemias: nutritional and other causes. Med Clin North Am. 2017;101(2):297–317.
13. Abbaspour N, Hurrell R, Kelishadi R. Review on iron and its importance for human health. J Res Med Sci. 2014;19(2):164–74.
14. Balarajan Y, Ramakrishnan U, Özaltin E, Shankar AH, Subramanian SV. Anaemia in low-income and middle-income countries. Lancet. 2011;378(9809):2123–35.
15. Breymann C. Iron deficiency anemia in pregnancy. Semin Hematol. 2015;52(4):339–47.
16. McLean E, Cogswell M, Egli I, Wojdyla D, de Benoist B. Worldwide prevalence of anaemia, WHO Vitamin and Mineral Nutrition Information System, 1993–2005. Public Health Nutr. 2009;12(4):444–54.
17. Crawford J, Caserta C, Roila F. Hematopoietic growth factors: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines. Ann Oncol. 2010;21(Suppl 5):v248–51.
18. Cohen AR. Causes and consequences of iron deficiency and anemia in children. Curr Opin Pediatr. 2010;22(1):10–5.
19. Ioannou GN, Rockey DC, Bryson CL, Weiss NS. Iron deficiency and gastrointestinal malignancy: a population-based cohort study. Am J Med. 2002;113(4):276–80.

20. Cohen AR. Causes and consequences of iron deficiency and anemia in children. Curr Opin Pediatr. 2010;22(1):10–5.
21. Ioannou GN, Rockey DC, Bryson CL, Weiss NS. Iron deficiency and gastrointestinal malignancy: a population-based cohort study. Am J Med. 2002;113(4):276–80.
22. Grzywacz A, Świątek P, Kwiatkowska D, Kozioł M. Side effects of oral iron supplementation in patients with iron deficiency anemia. Pol Merkur Lekarski. 2017;43(253):290–4.
23. Fitriani L, Fikri A, Wahyuni WS, Rosidah R. Herbal medicine as an alternative treatment for iron deficiency anemia: A review. Pharmacogn J. 2020;12(6):1483–7.
24. Uma Maheswari T, Subramanian A, Ravi V. Review on herbal formulations used in the treatment of anemia. Int J Pharm Sci Rev Res. 2017;47(2):97–102.
25. Adeniji MO, Ayepola OR, Oyedapo OO. Phytochemical, nutritional and toxicological evaluation of *Solanum aethiopicum* leaf extract. J Ethnopharmacol. 2019;233:53–60.
26. Oboh G, Ademosun AO, Omojokun OS. Comparative effects of *Solanum aethiopicum* and *Solanum macrocarpon* on some biochemical indices of oxidative stress and anemia in phenylhydrazine-induced anemic rats. J Evid Based Integr Med. 2018;23:1–8.
27. Uhegbu FO, Elekwa I, Kanu I, Iweala EEJ. Evaluation of the safety and therapeutic potential of *Solanum aethiopicum* in anemia-induced Wistar rats. Afr J Tradit Complement Altern Med. 2017;14(3):1–8.
28. Yakubu MT, Akintunde JK, Adedapo AA. Hematopoietic properties of *Justicia secunda* leaf extract in phenylhydrazine-induced anemic mice. J Ethnopharmacol. 2020;250:112472.
29. Oladunmoye MK, Kehinde FY, Akinmoladun AC. Comparative mineral composition of selected medicinal plants with known hematinic properties. Afr J Tradit Complement Altern Med. 2018;15(4):81–87
30. Fadeyi BO, Akinmoladun FO, Ojo OS. Haematological effects of *Moringa oleifera* leaf extract on phenylhydrazine-induced anaemia in Wistar rats. J Med Plants Res. 2020;14(3):123–129.
31. Umar IA, Ogenyi SI, Okodaso D, James DB, Oyinloye BE, Kwanashie HO. Ameliorative effect of aqueous extract of *Ziziphus mauritiana* leaf on anaemia and some hematological parameters in phenylhydrazine-induced anaemia in rats. J Ethnopharmacol. 2007;111(2):345–348.
32. Asiedu-Gyekye IJ, Frimpong-Manso S, Awortwe C, Antwi DA, Nyarko AK. Toxicological evaluation of the antimalarial herb *Phyllanthus amarus* in rodents. J Pharm Bioallied Sci. 2012;4(2):132–137.

33. Jaiswal M, Kumar A, Dubey A. Hematopoietic potential of beetroot (*Beta vulgaris*) extract in phenylhydrazine-induced anemic rats. J Med Plants Stud. 2018;6(3):87–91.
34. Cho JH, Lee YM, Lee SM. Hematologic and antioxidant effects of beetroot supplementation in anemic mice. Nutr Res Pract. 2016;10(6):592–598.
35. Macmillan DC, Langdon SP, Rogers MV. The mechanism of phenylhydrazine-induced hemolysis: implications for antioxidant defense. Free Radic Biol Med. 2004;36(9):1158–1166.
36. Indhumathi D, Kannikaparameswari S. Effect of *Beta vulgaris* extract on hematological parameters in rats: a dose-dependent study. Int J Pharm Sci Res. 2017;8(2):425–429.
37. Ganeshpurkar A, Saluja AK. The pharmacological potential of *Beta vulgaris*: a review. Int J Med Res Health Sci. 2011;1(3):118–124.
38. Patel MV, Patel RK, Patel MP. Evaluation of hematinic activity of Boerhaavia diffusa in rats. *Int J Pharm Sci Res.* 2010;1(11):70–75.
39. Tripathi YB, Chaurasia S. Effect of Boerhaavia diffusa on red cell parameters in phenylhydrazine-induced anemia in rats. *Phytother Res.* 1991;5(1):28–31.
40. Sinha S, Dixit KS. Hematinic activity of Punarnava in rats. *Anc Sci Life.* 1995;15(1):18–22.
41. Goorani S, Koohi MK, Zangeneh A, Zangeneh MM, Moradi R. Pharmacological evaluation of anti-anemic property of aqueous extracts of Falcaria vulgaris leaf in rats. Comp Clin Path. 2019;28(5):1221-1227.

Bhumi Publishing, India
June 2025

INVASOMES:
SMART NANOCARRIER FOR TRANSDERMAL DRUG DELIVERY

Dipti Gohil*, Nirmal Shah, Sunil Kardani, Shivkant Patel
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth deemed to be University, Vadodara, Gujarat, India
*Corresponding author E-mail: diptigohil2014@gmail.com

Abstract:

Invasomes are a novel class of lipid-based vesicular drug delivery systems specifically designed to enhance drug permeation through the skin. They are composed of phospholipids, ethanol, and terpenes, which synergistically improve the flexibility, deformability, and penetration ability of the vesicles. Unlike conventional liposomes, invasomes can effectively traverse the stratum corneum and deliver active pharmaceutical ingredients into deeper skin layers, making them ideal for both topical and transdermal drug administration. This delivery system can encapsulate both hydrophilic and lipophilic drugs, providing advantages such as improved bioavailability, sustained release, and targeted drug delivery. Various methods, such as thin-film hydration and sonication, are employed to prepare invasomes, and their physicochemical characteristics are evaluated using parameters like vesicle size, zeta potential, entrapment efficiency, and deformability index. Invasomes have shown promising applications in treating skin infections, inflammation, fungal diseases, and even in cosmeceuticals and cancer therapy. Additionally, they are being explored for the delivery of herbal extracts and phytoconstituents. Their safety profile, combined with their effectiveness, supports their potential in modern drug delivery. This chapter provides a comprehensive overview of the composition, preparation, characterization, toxicity, and diverse applications of invasomes, highlighting their growing relevance in pharmaceutical and therapeutic sciences.

Keywords: Invasomes, Vesicular Drug Delivery, Skin Penetration, Transdermal Delivery, Phospholipid Vesicles

1. Introduction:

The landscape of drug delivery has undergone significant transformation with the introduction of advanced carriers that aim to overcome conventional barriers in pharmacotherapy. Among the various routes of administration, transdermal delivery stands out for its potential to offer sustained drug release, bypass hepatic first-pass metabolism, and improve patient compliance due to its non-invasive nature (1). Despite these advantages, the skin's outermost layer, the stratum corneum, acts as a substantial barrier, limiting the passive diffusion of many therapeutic agents.

To address this challenge, researchers have turned to nanocarrier-based delivery systems, particularly vesicular systems, which have demonstrated the capacity to encapsulate and transport drugs across physiological membranes. Traditional liposomes, composed of phospholipid bilayers, have been widely studied for dermal and transdermal applications. However, their rigid structures and relatively large size often hinder their effective penetration into deeper skin layers.

This limitation has driven the development of more flexible and adaptive vesicles. One such advancement is the creation of invasomes, a novel class of deformable vesicular carriers specifically designed to enhance transdermal drug transport. These vesicles differ from conventional liposomes in both composition and performance. Invasomes are typically formulated using phospholipids, ethanol, and terpenes, a combination that significantly increases their ability to traverse the skin barrier.

The defining feature of invasomes lies in their deformability. Unlike rigid liposomes, invasomes can compress and pass through narrow intercellular spaces within the stratum corneum. This enhanced flexibility is achieved by incorporating ethanol and terpenes into the vesicular structure. Ethanol serves as both a solvent and a skin penetration enhancer; it increases the fluidity of the skin lipids and temporarily disrupts the tight packing of the stratum corneum. Terpenes, derived from essential oils, further aid this process by altering the skin's lipid structure, facilitating deeper drug penetration (2).

The synergy between these components—phospholipids providing structural support, ethanol promoting lipid fluidization, and terpenes enhancing permeability—creates a vesicle that is not only efficient in skin permeation but also capable of encapsulating a wide variety of drugs. Invasomes have been shown to accommodate both hydrophilic and lipophilic molecules, making them versatile for numerous therapeutic applications.

The development of invasomes represents a significant milestone in enhancing transdermal drug delivery. These vesicles have demonstrated promising results in delivering low and high molecular weight drugs, including analgesics, anti-inflammatory agents, antifungal medications, and hormonal treatments. Additionally, their ability to deliver drugs directly to or through the skin reduces the need for oral or injectable formulations, thus minimizing systemic side effects and improving patient adherence (3).

Various formulation techniques are employed to prepare invasomes, many of which are adaptations of traditional liposome preparation methods. Techniques such as thin-film hydration, ethanol injection, and reverse-phase evaporation are commonly used. These methods are modified to include ethanol and terpenes, ensuring that the vesicles maintain their unique deformable properties. Post-preparation, invasomes undergo comprehensive characterization to

evaluate their size distribution, surface charge, entrapment efficiency, vesicle morphology, elasticity, and drug release profile.

The safety profile of invasomes is another area of active investigation. While the individual components—such as ethanol and terpenes—are generally recognized as safe, their cumulative effects in a single formulation necessitate thorough toxicological evaluation (4). Studies involving skin irritation, cytotoxicity assays, and long-term application assessments are critical to ensuring that invasomes can be safely applied in clinical settings. Proper formulation optimization helps minimize any potential adverse effects while preserving the permeation-enhancing properties of the system.

In addition to pharmaceutical uses, invasomes have found a niche in cosmetic and dermatological products. Their ability to enhance the dermal delivery of active ingredients like vitamins, antioxidants, and skin-lightening agents makes them suitable for anti-aging creams, acne treatments, and hyperpigmentation therapies. The growing demand for non-invasive cosmetic solutions has further driven interest in invasomal formulations.

Moreover, emerging studies suggest that invasomes could serve as carriers for macromolecules such as peptides, proteins, and even genetic material. This opens possibilities for the transdermal delivery of drugs that typically require invasive administration routes. Although the delivery of such large molecules through the skin is inherently difficult, the flexible nature of invasomes provides a potential mechanism to overcome these challenges.

Despite their advantages, several obstacles remain in the path of widespread clinical use of invasomes. One major concern is the stability of these vesicles, especially given the presence of volatile and reactive components like ethanol and terpenes (5). Ensuring consistent performance over the shelf life of the product requires careful selection of excipients and optimization of storage conditions. Furthermore, scalability and reproducibility in industrial production must be addressed for commercial viability.

2. Composition of Invasomes

Invasomes are advanced lipid-based nanocarriers designed specifically to enhance the transdermal and dermal delivery of drugs. Their unique composition is what distinguishes them from other vesicular systems like conventional liposomes or ethosomes. The primary components of invasomes include phospholipids, ethanol, and terpenes, each playing a specific and synergistic role in improving skin permeation and vesicle deformability (6). The careful balance and interaction among these components are essential for the functional performance of invasomes.

a. Phospholipids

Phospholipids form the fundamental structural framework of invasomal vesicles. These amphiphilic molecules spontaneously arrange into bilayer structures in aqueous environments,

creating spherical vesicles capable of encapsulating a wide variety of drugs. Hydrophilic drugs are typically enclosed within the aqueous core, while lipophilic drugs are incorporated within the lipid bilayer.

Commonly used phospholipids include soybean phosphatidylcholine (SPC), egg phosphatidylcholine (EPC), and dipalmitoylphosphatidylcholine (DPPC). These natural or semi-synthetic lipids are favored for their biocompatibility, safety, and ability to mimic biological membranes. Phospholipids contribute to the stability of the vesicle structure and control the release rate of the encapsulated drug.

b. Ethanol

Ethanol is a crucial component in invasome formulations, serving multiple roles. Firstly, it acts as a penetration enhancer by interacting with the intercellular lipids of the stratum corneum, causing increased fluidization and disruption of the tightly packed lipid layers (7). This temporarily reduces the skin's barrier function and facilitates the entry of vesicles and drug molecules.

Further, ethanol enhances the flexibility and elasticity of the phospholipid bilayer, allowing the invasomes to deform and pass through narrow pores within the skin. It also improves the solubility of lipophilic drugs and promotes better encapsulation efficiency.

Typically, ethanol concentrations used in invasomal formulations range between 10% and 40%, depending on the drug properties and desired permeation profile. The optimization of ethanol concentration is crucial because excess ethanol can destabilize the vesicles or cause skin irritation.

c. Terpenes

Terpenes are volatile, naturally occurring organic compounds extracted from essential oils of various plants. They are well-known skin penetration enhancers and are used in invasomes to further improve drug permeation through the stratum corneum (8). Terpenes work by altering the lipid structure of the skin, increasing its permeability without causing permanent damage.

Commonly used terpenes in invasomal systems include: Limonene, Menthol, Cineole (Eucalyptol), Citral, Carvone

These terpenes not only improve drug diffusion across the skin but also enhance the fluidity of the vesicular membrane, further contributing to the deformable nature of invasomes. The selection and concentration of terpenes are formulation-dependent and must be optimized to avoid potential skin irritation.

d. Aqueous Phase (Water or Buffer)

The aqueous medium is essential for the hydration of the phospholipid film during vesicle formation. It also serves as the dispersion phase in which invasomes are suspended.

Buffers such as phosphate-buffered saline (PBS) or distilled water are commonly used. The choice of aqueous phase may influence the vesicle size, charge, and overall stability.

e. Other Additives

Depending on the specific application, invasomal formulations may include additional agents such as:

- Stabilizers (e.g., cholesterol) to enhance membrane rigidity and prevent leakage.
- Preservatives (e.g., parabens or benzalkonium chloride) for microbial stability.
- Cryoprotectants (e.g., mannitol or trehalose) for formulations intended for freeze-drying.

3. Method of Preparation of Invasomes

The method of preparing invasomes is a multi-step process that integrates traditional liposomal techniques with innovations such as ethanol and terpene incorporation. Each preparation step; lipid hydration, ethanol addition, drug loading, and vesicle sizing are required to optimize to ensure that the final formulation possesses the required flexibility, stability, and skin penetration capabilities needed for effective transdermal or topical drug delivery (9).

The choice of method depends on the physicochemical properties of the drug and the intended application. Below is a detailed overview of the standard preparation techniques used for invasomes.

1. Thin-Film Hydration Method

This is the most widely used and versatile method for preparing invasomes. It involves the following key steps:

Preparation of Lipid Film: Phospholipids (e.g., phosphatidylcholine) and the drug (if lipophilic) are dissolved in a mixture of organic solvents such as chloroform and methanol in a round-bottom flask. Terpenes are also added at this stage to ensure uniform distribution in the lipid matrix. The solvent mixture is evaporated using a rotary evaporator under reduced pressure at a temperature above the lipid phase transition temperature (typically 40–45°C). This leads to the formation of a thin, dry lipid film on the inner surface of the flask (10).

The dry lipid film is hydrated using an aqueous buffer (such as phosphate-buffered saline) containing ethanol (usually 10–40% v/v). Hydration is carried out under constant agitation (e.g., vortexing or shaking), resulting in the formation of multilamellar vesicles. If the drug is hydrophilic, it is incorporated during the hydration step. The hydration time and temperature are optimized to enhance drug encapsulation efficiency. To reduce the particle size and form unilamellar vesicles, the suspension is subjected to probe sonication or extrusion through polycarbonate membranes with defined pore sizes (100–400 nm). This step ensures uniformity in vesicle size and enhances skin permeation performance.

2. Ethanol Injection Method

This technique is suitable for drugs that are sensitive to high temperatures and is considered simpler and less time-consuming. Phospholipids, terpenes, and lipophilic drugs are dissolved in ethanol.

This organic solution is injected slowly into an aqueous buffer (pre-heated to 30–40°C) under continuous stirring. Upon contact with the aqueous medium, the phospholipids self-assemble into vesicles spontaneously, forming an invasomal dispersion (11).

The vesicle suspension is then subjected to size reduction techniques such as ultrasonication or extrusion to obtain vesicles in the desired nanometer range. The final formulation is stored at 4°C. This method avoids the use of organic solvents like chloroform and is therefore considered more eco-friendly and safer for thermolabile drugs.

3. Reverse Phase Evaporation Method

This method is occasionally used for high drug-loading efficiency of hydrophilic drugs.

A mixture of phospholipids and terpenes is dissolved in a volatile organic solvent (e.g., isopropyl ether), to which the aqueous drug solution is added. The mixture is sonicated to form a stable water-in-oil emulsion.

The emulsion is subjected to evaporation under reduced pressure to remove the organic solvent. This results in the formation of gel-like vesicles that eventually transform into uniform invasomal vesicles upon hydration.

Ethanol plays a vital role in both membrane fluidization and drug solubilization. However, excessive ethanol may lead to vesicle destabilization. Optimal concentrations (typically 20–30%) must be maintained to achieve the desired elasticity and permeation without compromising stability. Different terpenes vary in their effect on skin lipids and vesicle behaviour (12). Limonene, cineole, menthol, and carvone are commonly used, typically in concentrations ranging from 0.5% to 3%. The terpene type and ratio must be chosen carefully to avoid skin irritation while maximizing penetration.

Hydrophilic drugs are usually added during the hydration step, while lipophilic drugs are incorporated in the lipid phase. The drug's solubility, stability, and charge influence its entrapment and release behaviour in the final invasomal formulation.

Vesicle size directly impacts skin penetration. Smaller, more uniform vesicles (<300 nm) are more effective in traversing skin layers. Size reduction via sonication or extrusion is thus a critical step in invasome preparation.

Post-preparation, the invasomal suspension can be used directly, or it may be further processed into gels, creams, or patches for ease of application. In some cases, freeze-drying with cryoprotectants is performed to improve long-term stability. The final formulation must be

evaluated for parameters such as pH, vesicle size, zeta potential, entrapment efficiency, deformability, and *in vitro* release.

4. Characterization of Invasomes

The characterization of invasomes is a critical step in confirming their structural integrity, physicochemical properties, and suitability for drug delivery applications. Various analytical techniques are employed to assess the morphology, size distribution, surface charge, entrapment efficiency, deformability, and stability of invasomes (13). Proper characterization helps in understanding the behavior of invasomes under physiological conditions and in optimizing formulation parameters to achieve desired therapeutic outcomes. The major characterization parameters are discussed below:

- **Vesicle Size and Polydispersity Index (PDI)**

Vesicle size is a key determinant of invasome performance, influencing skin penetration, drug release, and stability. Dynamic Light Scattering (DLS), also known as Photon Correlation Spectroscopy (PCS), is commonly used to determine the average vesicle size and polydispersity index (PDI). Invasomes typically range between 100–300 nm. A lower PDI value (<0.3) indicates a uniform size distribution and better colloidal stability (14). Size and PDI can be influenced by the lipid composition, ethanol concentration, sonication time, and preparation method.

- **Zeta Potential**

Zeta potential reflects the surface charge of invasomes and is an important indicator of stability. It is measured using laser Doppler electrophoresis. A high absolute value of zeta potential (±30 mV or higher) suggests good electrostatic repulsion between vesicles, which prevents aggregation. The presence of ethanol and terpenes can significantly alter the surface charge of invasomes. Generally, invasomes exhibit a negative zeta potential due to the presence of phospholipids and ethanol.

- **Surface Morphology**

The shape and surface morphology of invasomes are evaluated using imaging techniques such as Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM), Scanning Electron Microscopy (SEM), and Atomic Force Microscopy (AFM). TEM is widely preferred due to its high resolution, allowing visualization of spherical vesicles with defined bilayer membranes (15). SEM provides topographical details, whereas AFM offers three-dimensional surface profiling. These techniques help to confirm the vesicular structure and detect any aggregation or fusion.

- **Entrapment Efficiency (EE%)**

Entrapment efficiency refers to the percentage of drug encapsulated within the invasomes relative to the initial amount used. It is determined by separating the free drug from the vesicle-entrapped drug using ultracentrifugation, dialysis, or gel filtration, followed by

spectrophotometric or chromatographic analysis. High entrapment efficiency is desirable for sustained release and improved therapeutic efficacy. The EE% is influenced by factors such as lipid composition, drug solubility, and method of preparation.

- **Deformability Index (DI)**

Deformability is a unique characteristic of invasomes that differentiates them from conventional liposomes. It is measured using an extrusion method, where vesicles are forced through polycarbonate membranes of known pore size under applied pressure. The deformability index is calculated using a specific formula based on the vesicle size before and after extrusion and the amount of vesicle passed through the membrane (16). A higher DI value indicates enhanced elasticity, which facilitates deeper skin penetration.

- **Fourier-Transform Infrared Spectroscopy (FTIR)**

FTIR spectroscopy is employed to identify possible interactions between the drug and excipients (phospholipids, terpenes, ethanol) in invasomes. It helps to confirm the chemical stability of the drug within the vesicular system and any shifts in characteristic peaks indicate potential bonding or structural changes. This analysis supports the integrity of the encapsulated drug and the compatibility of formulation components.

- **Differential Scanning Calorimetry (DSC)**

DSC is used to study the thermal behavior and phase transitions of invasomal components. The presence of the drug may alter the thermotropic behaviour of the lipid bilayer. Shifts or disappearance of endothermic peaks suggest successful encapsulation and interactions between the drug and lipid matrix.

- ***In Vitro* Drug Release**

In vitro drug release studies provide insight into the release kinetics of the drug from invasomes. This is typically performed using Franz diffusion cells with synthetic or biological membranes and suitable dissolution media (17). Data obtained are fitted into various kinetic models to understand the release mechanism (e.g., zero-order, first-order, Higuchi, Korsmeyer-Peppas).

- **Stability Studies**

Stability of invasomes is evaluated under different storage conditions (temperature, humidity) over time. Parameters like vesicle size, PDI, zeta potential, and drug content are monitored. Stable formulations maintain consistent characteristics without significant aggregation, leakage, or phase separation.

5. Application of Invasomes

Invasomes have emerged as a promising vesicular drug delivery system owing to their enhanced skin penetration, improved drug bioavailability, and capacity to deliver a wide range of therapeutic agents. Some of the key applications of invasomes are described below:

- **Topical Drug Delivery**

Invasomes are highly effective in topical delivery of drugs due to their ability to penetrate the skin barrier efficiently. They are used to deliver anti-inflammatory, antifungal, and antimicrobial agents directly to the site of action, reducing systemic side effects. For example, invasomal formulations of drugs like diclofenac, clotrimazole, and acyclovir have shown improved therapeutic efficacy and prolonged drug retention in the skin compared to conventional formulations (18).

- **Transdermal Drug Delivery**

Invasomes facilitate systemic delivery of drugs through the skin, bypassing the gastrointestinal tract and first-pass metabolism. This approach is especially beneficial for drugs with poor oral bioavailability. Transdermal invasomal formulations of drugs such as insulin, testosterone, and propranolol have demonstrated sustained release profiles and better patient compliance (19).

- **Delivery of Phytoconstituents and Natural Compounds**

Many plant-derived bioactive compounds have limited skin permeability and stability. Invasomes have been explored as carriers for natural compounds like curcumin, resveratrol, and quercetin to enhance their therapeutic potential in skin disorders such as psoriasis, eczema, and photoaging. These formulations improve antioxidant and anti-inflammatory activities while ensuring targeted delivery.

- **Cosmeceutical Applications**

Invasomes are gaining popularity in cosmetic formulations due to their ability to deliver active ingredients into the deeper layers of the skin. They are used for the delivery of anti-aging agents, skin lightening compounds, and vitamins (e.g., vitamin C, vitamin E) for improved skin hydration, elasticity, and complexion.

- **Cancer Therapy**

Invasomes have been investigated for localized delivery of anticancer drugs to treat skin cancers such as melanoma (20). They offer site-specific delivery, reduce systemic toxicity, and improve drug accumulation at the tumour site.

Conclusion:

Invasomes represent a novel and efficient vesicular drug delivery system with enhanced skin penetration capabilities due to their unique composition of phospholipids, ethanol, and terpenes. From topical and transdermal drug delivery to the incorporation of natural compounds and anticancer agents, invasomes offer significant advantages over conventional systems. Their potential to improve bioavailability, reduce side effects, and provide sustained release underscores their growing importance in pharmaceutical research and development for targeted and patient-friendly drug delivery solutions. Invasomes represent a versatile and effective drug

delivery system with wide-ranging applications in dermatology, transdermal therapy, natural compound delivery, cosmeceuticals, and oncology, making them a valuable tool in modern pharmaceutics.

References:

1. Tonge MR, Pimpalshende PM, Kosalge SB. Advancements in invasomes for enhanced drug delivery: A comprehensive review. AJPER. 2024;13(1):15-26.
2. Lakshmi PK, Mounica V, Manoj KY, Prasanthi D. Preparation and evaluation of curcumin invasomes. International Journal of Drug Delivery. 2014 Apr 1;6(2):113.
3. Nangare S, Dugam S. Smart invasome synthesis, characterizations, pharmaceutical applications, and pharmacokinetic perspective: a review. Future Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences. 2020; 6:1-21.
4. Babaie S, Del Bakhshayesh AR, Ha JW, Hamishehkar H, Kim KH. Invasome: A novel nanocarrier for transdermal drug delivery. Nanomaterials. 2020; 10(2):341.
5. Dragicevic-Curic N, Scheglmann D, Albrecht V, Fahr A. Temoporfin-loaded invasomes: development, characterization and in vitro skin penetration studies. Journal of Controlled Release. 2008; 127(1):59-69.
6. Fouad AG, Ali MR, Naguib DM, Farouk HO, Zanaty MI, El-Ela FI. Design, optimization, and in vivo evaluation of invasome-mediated candesartan for the control of diabetes-associated atherosclerosis. Drug Delivery and Translational Research. 2024 ;14(2):474-90.
7. Cunha IV, Campos AM, Gerola AP, Caon T. Effect of invasome composition on membrane fluidity, vesicle stability and skin interactions. International Journal of Pharmaceutics. 2023; 646:123472.
8. El-Nabarawi MA, Shamma RN, Farouk F, Nasralla SM. Dapsone-loaded invasomes as a potential treatment of acne: preparation, characterization, and in vivo skin deposition assay. Aaps Pharmscitech. 2018; 19:2174-84.
9. Rathore P. Topical Application of Celecoxib Loaded Invasom Development, Characteristics and in-Vitro Skin Penetration Studies. International Journal of Scientific Research and Technology. 2025.
10. Abou-Taleb HA, Zaki RM, Hefny AA, Afzal O, Shahataa MG, El-Ela FI, Salem HF, Fouad AG. In vitro and in vivo evaluation of isoxsuprine loaded invasomes for efficient treatment of diabetes-accelerated atherosclerosis. Journal of Drug Delivery Science and Technology. 2024; 96:105686.
11. Ammar HO, Tadros MI, Salama NM, Ghoneim AM. Ethosome-derived invasomes as a potential transdermal delivery system for vardenafil hydrochloride: development, optimization and application of physiologically based pharmacokinetic modeling in adults and geriatrics. International journal of nanomedicine. 2020: 5671-85.

12. Kumar D, Sil D, Kurmi BD, Kumar M. Future Prospects and Regulatory Pathways for Invasome Technologies in Transdermal Drug Delivery. ASSAY and Drug Development Technologies. 2025.
13. Dwivedi R, Bala R, Madaan R, Singh S, Sindhu RK. Terpene-based novel invasomes: pioneering cancer treatment strategies in traditional medicine. Journal of Complementary and Integrative Medicine. 2025; 22(1):1-4.
14. Hoda Q, Aqil M, Ahad A, Imam SS, Praveen A, Qadir A, Iqbal Z. Optimization of valencene containing lipid vesicles for boosting the transungual delivery of itraconazole. Biotech. 2021; 11:1-3.
15. Zafar A, Yasir M, Singh L, Jafar M, Warsi MH, Panda DS. Luteolin-loaded invasomes gel for transdermal delivery: Development, optimization, in-vitro, and preclinical evaluation. Journal of Oleo Science. 2024;73(9):1221-40.
16. Dragicevic N, Verma DD, Fahr A. Invasomes: Vesicles for enhanced skin delivery of drugs. InPercutaneous penetration enhancers chemical methods in penetration enhancement: nanocarriers 2016 (pp. 77-92). Berlin, Heidelberg: Springer Berlin Heidelberg.
17. Singh Y, Bhardwaj A. formulation development and evaluation of itraconazole loaded invasomes hydrogel. Journal of Pharmaceutical Research International. 2021; 33(59B):657-65.
18. Dragicevic-Curic N, Scheglmann D, Albrecht V, Fahr A. Development of different temoporfin-loaded invasomes—novel nanocarriers of temoporfin: Characterization, stability and in vitro skin penetration studies. Colloids and Surfaces B: Biointerfaces. 2009; 70(2):198-206.
19. Qadri GR, Ahad A, Aqil M, Imam SS, Ali A. Invasomes of isradipine for enhanced transdermal delivery against hypertension: formulation, characterization, and in vivo pharmacodynamic study. Artificial cells, nanomedicine, and biotechnology. 2017 Jan 2;45(1):139-45.
20. Cunha IV, Campos AM, Gerola AP, Caon T. Effect of invasome composition on membrane fluidity, vesicle stability and skin interactions. International Journal of Pharmaceutics. 2023; 646:123472.

AN OVERVIEW OF GLYCOGEN STORAGE DISEASES

Ujjval P. Vaghela*, Harshkumar Brahmbhatt, Mahavir Sharma, Rahul Trivedi
Department of Pharmacy,
Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Vadodara.
*Corresponding author E-mail: ujjvalvaghela08@gmail.com

Abstract:

The primary organs impacted by glycogen storage diseases (GSD) are the liver, skeletal muscles, heart, and, in rare cases, the central nervous system and kidneys. When symptoms first appear, how serious they are, and how many people die from these rare diseases are all very different. There are several types of glycogen storage diseases, each characterized by a specific enzyme abnormality. Phosphorylation and hydrolysis of glycogen are controlled by an individual enzyme. When a particular enzyme is mutated, it still causes a wide range of phenotypes and clinical manifestations. Prognosis for GSD patients can be good or worse depending on the particular enzyme mutation. Maintaining glucose homeostasis with dietary management and the use of uncooked cornstarch is currently the focus of treatment. Multiple therapeutic options exist for both the symptoms and long-term consequences of this disease, including dietary modifications, pharmaceutical treatment, physical and supportive therapies, ERT, and organ transplantation. Since there is currently no cure for GSDs, researchers are looking into other treatments, like as gene therapy, to see whether they can help. If a patient presents with any of the following symptoms—fasting hypoglycemia, hepatomegaly, hypertransaminasemia, hyperlipidemia, exercise intolerance, muscle cramps/pain, rhabdomyolysis, or weakness—doctors should be prepared to consider GSDs as a possible diagnosis. Aggressive treatment and early diagnosis are associated with better prognosis. Some glycogen storage disorders (GSDs) have fatal neonatal or infantile versions that manifest in the first year of life, whereas others rarely exhibit symptoms or may induce exercise intolerance as their only apparent sign.

Keywords: Glycogen Storage Disease, Hypoglycemia, Molecular, Phosphorylase Activation System Defects

1. Introduction:

Glycogen storage diseases (GSDs), also known as glycogenoses, are hereditary metabolic illnesses characterized by deficiencies in enzymes and carrier-protein that facilitate the production or decomposition of glycogen. Problems with glycogen uptake led to the wrong storage and/or use of glycogen [1]. There are a lot of enzymatic activities that happen when glycogen is made and broken down, and hormones are very important for both processes. Insulin encourages the liver's glycogen store and muscles after a meal by both encouraging the synthesis of glycogen and stopping the breaking down of glycogen. Glucagon and catecholamines stop

expedite the breakdown of glycogen and promote its synthesis when exercising or in the intervals between meals. Hepatic glycogen stores glucose for when blood sugar levels drop after fasting, while muscle glycogen provides fuel for high-intensity exercise [2].

Multisystemic diseases, such as GSDs, can manifest at any stage of life, from infancy through adulthood. There are about 1 case of GSD for every 20,000 to 43,000 live births, and types I, III, and IX cause 80% of hepatic GSDs. This diverse collection of uncommon disorders signifies congenital defects in glucose metabolism and is categorized according to the defective enzyme and the tissues involved [3]. Glycogen storage diseases (GSDs) mainly affect the liver or muscles, or both, because glycogen is found in large amounts in these tissues. While the liver and skeletal muscle are the most common organs affected, other organs like the heart, kidneys, and brain can also be involved, depending on the enzyme that is destroyed and how it is expressed in different tissues. Despite the fact that GSDs share some common clinical features, a wide variety of clinical phenotypes can be observed [4].

In hepatic glycogen storage disorders (GSDs), hypoglycemia is the hallmark. As a general rule, hepatomegaly is a hallmark of liver-related glycogen storage disorders (GSDs), with the possible exception of GSD-0. Muscle GSDs, conversely, may manifest as inability to exercise, muscular cramps or pain, rhabdomyolysis, and weakness; in instances when the heart is involved, they can cause cardiomyopathy. Because the first symptoms can show up in adults, Both pediatricians and doctors are familiar with this set of uncommon disorders, who care for adults should know about and be able to treat. Glycogen storage diseases (GSDs) affect more than one system in the body, thus the best way to treat them is with a cross-disciplinary strategy that improves metabolic regulation, improves patients' well-being while decreasing the rates of illness and death [5].

In addition to a metabolic dietitian, the patient should have a biochemical geneticist, endocrinologist, hepatologist, or metabolic disorders specialist overseeing their care. Depending on the kind of GSD, its symptoms, and any complications, doctors that specialize in nephrology, hematology, genetics, cardiology, gastroenterology, neurology, physical therapy, social work, and transplants may also be needed to treat it.

2. Low Levels of Glycogen Synthase

Glycogen synthase (GYS) is made up of two types of genes that are located in separate places in the genome: muscle GYS (GYS1; 19q13.33) and liver GYS (GYS2; 12p12.1). In 1963, the initial description of GSD-0 as a liver glycogen synthetase deficiency was published. Since GSD-0 has an extremely low liver glycogen concentration, it differs from other hepatic GSDs, which raises doubts about whether it should be classified as a real GSD. Nevertheless, the condition is categorized as a GSD since it presents a phenotype akin to classical glycogenoses,

characterized by the absence of glycogen during fasting periods. GSD-0 is a hereditary disorder that runs in families [6].

The condition results from Mutations in the GYS2 gene, which was identified at 12p12.2 in 1994, can be either compound heterozygous or homozygous. The fastest way for the liver to make glycogen is through the hepatic isoform, which is known as liver GYS. A lack of GYS in the liver causes a big drop in the amount of glycogen stored in the liver. If the body can't make glycogen, it will turn the carbohydrates in food into lactate instead of storing them liver glycogen stores. Fasting causes ketotic hypoglycemia rather than postprandial hyperglycemia, glycosuria, or lactic acidemia. After a normal overnight fast, there is typically ketosis [7].

There are many different types of phenotypes. Fasting hypoglycemia typically occurs in late infancy at the cessation of nighttime feedings. Hypoglycemia usually happens early in the morning, before breakfast. The symptoms of GSD-0, which include tiredness, pale skin, nausea, vomiting, and sometimes seizures, are caused by hypoglycemia. Some kids may have developmental delays, however, the majority of them exhibit typical neurological functioning. Symptoms may be mild or nonexistent in certain individuals. The enlargement of the liver is not a feature of GSD-0 at all. Only GSD-0, a disorder affecting the liver's glycogen storage, is not frequently associated with enlarged liver tissue. Individuals with GSD-0 often exhibit short height and osteopenia; nevertheless, numerous long-term consequences typically associated with different GSDs remain unreported. Rare but potentially diagnostically challenging symptoms of GSD-0 include hyperglycemia and glycosuria [8].

When combined with a normal-sized liver, postprandial hyperglycemia and glycosuria may erroneously suggest the initial phases of the diabetes mellitus. The process GSD-0 of diagnosed because there aren't many outward signs and the symptoms are milder. In GSD-0 symptoms are rapidly alleviated by consuming protein-rich meals on a regular basis and by taking uncooked cornstarch (UCCS) at night, which is a slow-release glucose source. One possible explanation for GSD-0's less severe clinical course compared to other hepatic GSD variations is that it preserves mechanisms for gluconeogenesis and fatty acid oxidation. Eating more protein with meals gives the body the building blocks it needs for gluconeogenesis and helps prevent against being overweight or obese and insulin resistance [9]. In order to prevent skeletal muscle from releasing alanine, prolonged fasting can cause hyperketonemia and elevated plasma free fatty acid concentrations. This reduction in gluconeogenic substrate availability exacerbates hypoglycemia. Fasting is linked to low blood sugar, high ketones, and low levels of alanine, while eating promotes high blood sugar and high levels of lactate. To keep blood sugar and lactate levels from rising too much after eating, you should restrict simple carbs and eat more complex carbohydrates with a low glycemic index.

To keep patients from getting hypoglycemia, they are usually fed more often during the day. Giving glucose or galactose to people with GSD-0 raises the amount of lactate and lipids in their blood and can be used as a diagnostic test. Traditional diagnostic methods, such as liver biopsies, have been superseded by non-invasive mutation analysis of the GYS2 gene for confirming extremely low hepatic glycogen levels and minimal or nonexistent GYS activity [10].

3. Disorder of von Gierke

Gierke initially talked about the disease in 1929, when he looked at the autopsies of two patients and found that their livers and kidneys were storing too much glycogen. In 1952, the fundamental problem in patients presenting a similar disease pattern was recognized by Cori and Cori as a deficiency of glucose-6-phosphatase (G6Pase). The glucose-6-phosphate complex's transporter protein, glucose-6-phosphate translocase (G6PT), was found to be deficient in 1978 by Narisawa et al. (G6PC), after more than twenty years of research. GSD type I (GSD-I) happens when either G6Pase or G6PT activity is low. The G6PT/G6PC system is made up of many parts and is in charge of making glucose by speeding up the culminating stage of glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis. G6Pase degrades G6P into free glucose and inorganic phosphate after G6PT transports it to the endoplasmic reticulum [11].

The two most common types of GSD-I are distinguished by the specific complex subunit that has been compromised. GSD-Ia is caused by a lack of the catalytic subunit of G6Pase, whereas GSD-Ib is caused by a lack of G6PT activity. Type Ia accounts for around 80% of GSD-I cases, while type Ib accounts for the remaining 20%. Concerning the existence of further subtypes, opinions vary. Alterations to the G6Pase and G6PT genes account for the vast majority of GSD-I cases. MoreoverWhile two subtypes of GSD-I, GSD-Ia and GSD-Ib, have been confirmed in clinical practice, the presence of other forms of GSD-I calls for more confirmation. The primary metabolic disturbance in all kinds is fasting hypoglycemia, resulting from the inability to convert G6P to free glucose, which impacts both glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis [12].

4. The Low Level of G6Pase

By revealing G6Pase deficiency in 1952, Cori and Cori made history by discovering the first specific enzyme deficiency associated with an inherited disease. Chromosome 17q21 was the site of the 1995 discovery of the G6PC catalytic subunit encoding gene. Some newborns may have very low blood sugar levels and lactic acidosis, but babies who don't get any treatment usually show signs of these conditions between the ages of 3 and 6 months (at a median age of 6 months), which is when they are fed less often, sleep more at night, or get sick and stop eating normally. Glucagon therapy is typically ineffective in treating symptoms, which can manifest shortly after birth [13].

The main symptoms include trouble eating, tremors, pale skin, excessive perspiration, rapid breathing, blue coloration of the skin, difficulty breathing, restlessness, convulsions, lethargy, and swelling or malfunction of the brain. These symptoms usually get worse in the morning or before meals. Quick newborn mortality and coma can result from untreated severe episodes of ketotic hypoglycemia. As they grow older, babies could start to take on specific characteristics, such a doll face with large cheeks and slim legs and limbs. They may also be very sleepy, have trouble waking up from sleep, shake, have an insatiable appetite, grow slowly, and have a big belly because their liver and kidneys are getting bigger. Xanthomas can sometimes show up on the extensor surfaces, including around the knees, elbows, or buttocks. Severe hypoglycemia symptoms are more likely after an infection since eating sufficiently becomes difficult due to a loss of appetite and/or gastrointestinal problems like vomiting and diarrhea. While there may be a delay in motor development, cognitive development is usually not affected unless neuroglycopenia causes brain injury [14].

People who don't have good metabolic control and have impaired platelet function are more likely to get nosebleeds. Chronic hypoglycemia leading to reduced glucose absorption in platelets with resultant intracellular ATP shortage being postulated as a possible explanation for platelet dysfunction in GSD-Ia. Furthermore, a reduced Patients with GSD-Ia exhibited an elevated plasma concentration of the von Willebrand factor antigen, which is a hallmark of acquired von Willebrand disease. Extra bleeding following surgery is also possible, as is epistaxis, easy bruising, menorrhagia, and hemorrhage from intrahepatic adenomas [15].

Despite medication, hypovitaminosis D is still observed in GSD-I patients. In people with poor metabolic control, GSD-I causes low bone mineral density over time. Poor diet, prolonged lactic acidosis, and hypogonadism can cause osteoporosis. The prevalence of anemia in both subtypes of GSD-I varies between age groups, ranging from 17% to 60%. There are several factors that might lead to GSD-I anemia, including a limited diet, an excessive intake of UCCS, chronic lactic acidosis, chronic renal disease, bleeding diathesis, chronic sickness, inadequate metabolic regulation, hepatic adenomas, and inflammatory bowel disease. The pathophysiology and frequency of GSD-Ia and GSD-Ib are distinct. Among 202 people analyzed from multiple centers, anemia was more common in GSD-Ib than Ia (71.8% vs. 41.7%, respectively). The prevalence of severe anemia is considerably higher in GSD-Ib patients. GSD-Ia severe anemia is linked to massive hepatic adenomas, while GSD-Ib has enterocolitis. Additional testing for inflammatory bowel disease and hepatic adenomas should be conducted in cases of severe anemia in GSD-Ia and GSD-Ib [16].

5. Low Level of G6PT

In 1968, After discovering that G6Pase activity was normal in vitro despite the lack of glucose release from G6P in vivo, scientists discovered a second form of GSD-I. It was

identified in 1975 that G6P has its own specific transport system that allows it to go from the cytoplasm to the endoplasmic reticulum. Chromosome 11q23 has the cloned SLC37A4 (the solute carrier family 37 member 4) gene, which is responsible for this. Symptoms of GSD-Ib include neutropenia, neutrophil dysfunction, and recurrent infections, in addition to the anomalies and symptoms observed in GSD-Ia. Although neutropenia and neutrophil dysfunction do not occur in all cases of GSD-Ib, they are common and make people more likely to get serious infections and inflammatory bowel disease [17].

Neutrophil counts may remain normal in the first year of life for certain GSD-Ib patients. It is possible that neutropenia and recurrent infections in GSD-Ib are caused by the G6PT gene, which, unlike G6Pase, is expressed in hematopoietic progenitor cells. Compromises in neutrophil motility and respiratory burst are symptoms of GSD-Ib. Neutrophil failure in GSD-Ib may be due to polymorphonuclear leukocytes' impaired glucose transport across their cell membrane. Microsomal trafficking of G6P may help protect neutrophils from oxidative stress. Genetic abnormalities in G6PT may cause this transporter to stop working, which could hurt cell functions and cause apoptosis [18]. This could be a factor in the neutrophil dysfunction reported in GSD-Ib. Not all persons with GSD-Ib develop neutropenia. Some G6PT mutations may still be active in the transporter, which could explain this. Patients with GSD-Ib who have neutropenia and neutrophil/monocyte dysfunction are more likely to get serious infections since their immune system isn't working right. Oral infections, gum disease, tooth decay, periodontal disease, and skin abscesses are common in young children with GSD-Ib. Ulcers in the mouth, genitals, and intestines may happen. People with GSD-Ib may have diarrhea that comes back again and again. There is evidence from colonoscopic biopsies and elevated levels of fecal α1-antitrypsin that inflammation of the intestinal mucosa is the root cause of this illness. No correlation between the GSD-Ib-causing genetic abnormalities and the onset of neutropenia, bacterial infections, or other systemic complications has been identified [19].

People who have GSD-Ib may need a liver transplant. Donating a liver usually improves hypoglycemia, lactic acidosis, and dyslipidemia; nevertheless, a lack of neutrophils (neutropenia) usually remains. People with GSD-Ib are more likely to get autoimmune diseases such myasthenia gravis and thyroid autoimmunity. People with GSD-Ia show no symptoms of thyroid disorders, but those with GSD-Ib are more likely to develop hypothyroidism and thyroid autoimmunity. Given the marginally higher thyrotropin levels, even in individuals with manifest hypothyroidism, it may be inferred that concurrent damage is occurring in the hypothalamus or pituitary gland. A recent study discovered that GSD-Ib individuals are more likely to develop autoimmune diseases because their conventional T cells and regulatory T cells don't work properly. This is because their T cells don't use glycolysis properly since they don't have enough

G6PT. While infrequent in GSD-Ib, patients may experience end-stage renal failure, perhaps requiring kidney transplantation [20].

Like GSD-Ia, GSD-Ib requires dietary control. Treatment with G-CSF is recommended for neutropenic patients with GSD-Ib. Restoring myeloid function and a normal neutrophil count may be possible with G-CSF treatment. Incorporating dietary restrictions and G-CSF medicines into a comprehensive treatment strategy substantially enhances patient outcomes by mitigating metabolic and myeloid complications. G-CSF injection is linked to an increase in peripheral neutrophil counts, a decrease in febrile episodes and infections, and an enhancement of enterocolitis in individuals with GSD-Ib. G-CSF improves the symptoms of inflammatory bowel disease when used with additional treatments such aminosalicylates, mesalamine, and corticosteroids. The most effective way to prevent side effects such as splenomegaly, hypersplenism, hepatomegaly, and bone soreness is to use the smallest effective dose of G-CSF. It is important to be careful about getting splenomegaly and myeloid cancer. Reports say that vitamin E can help with neutropenia and lower the number of infections [21].

6. The Low of PHK

Glucagon and epinephrine are important for controlling glycogenolysis because they activate adenylate cyclase, causes an increase in cytosolic cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP). A cascade of events begins with an increase in cAMP, which activates PHK through cAMP-dependent protein kinase. The next step involves the functional activation of glycogen phosphorylase in the liver by PHK, a protein kinase that is selective for serine and threonine. PHK is a heterotetramer made up of four separate parts: α, β, γ, and δ. various genes on various chromosomes encode each component, and these genes are expressed differently in different tissues. The α subunit contains the catalytic site, the β subunit directs activities, and the δ subunit is a calmodulin protein. PHK is found in many tissues and has several forms that are particular to each tissue [22].

There are two isoforms of the α subunit: a muscle isoform and a liver isoform. These are made by two distinct genes on the X chromosome: PHKA1 and PHKA2. Additionally, autosomal chromosomes contain the genetic loci for other components. Different isoforms of the γ subunit are produced by separate genes (PHKG1 and PHKG2, respectively) in the liver and muscles. There is a single gene (PHKB) that produces the β-subunit. However, PHKB can be found in the liver and muscles. There are two main kinds of liver PHK deficiency, abbreviated as GSD-IXa and X-linked glycogenosis, and GSD-IXb and GSD-IXc, respectively, based on the gene that is related with the condition. A pathogenic mutation in the X-chromosome-encoded PHKA2 gene causes GSDIXa, also known as PHKA2-related GSD-IX. When mutations occur in the PHKB gene, the resulting condition is known as GSD-IXb, and when mutations occur in the

PHKG2 gene, the resulting condition is known as GSD-IXc, and it is inherited in an autosomal recessive way [23].

For GSD-IXa, there are two subtypes: XLG-I (formerly GSD-VIII), which is characterized by normal erythrocyte activity but no liver or bilirubin enzyme activity, and XLG-II, which is characterized by normal bilirubin enzyme activity but no liver or bilirubin enzyme activity. GSD-IX is one of the most common types of GSD. About 25% of all GSDs are caused by a lack of PHK. It was thought that liver PHK insufficiency happened in 1 out of every 100,000 people. GSDIXa, the most frequent kind of liver PHK insufficiencyaccounts for the vast majority of GSD-IX patients (75%). Enzyme loci on the X chromosome are located for the alpha subunit of PHK in muscle and PHK in liver, respectively. There was a 1992 discovery of the liver PHK gene on Xp22.2-p22. Because it is passed down through the X chromosome, GSD-IXa is more common in men. X chromosomal inactivation can cause symptoms in female carriers [24].

7. Type VII Glycogen Storage Disorder

GSD type VII results from a defect in the phosphofructokinase enzyme (chromosome 12q13) and exhibits clinical characteristics that closely mimic those associated with GSD type V (McArdle's illness). Phosphofructokinase facilitates the phosphorylation of fructose-6-phosphate at the first position. There are three types of isoforms: muscle (chromosome 12q12), liver (chromosome 21q23), and platelet/fibroblast (chromosome 10p15.2-p15.3). People who have this disease can't exercise, get muscle cramps, have myoglobulinuria, mild hyperbilirubinemia, and reticulocytosis. Creatine kinase, LDH, and AST levels in the blood are high. There have only been roughly 90 cases described in the literature, and Ashkenazi Jews are overrepresented. A muscle biopsy reveals the buildup of glycogen in the subsarcolemmal area. There is also a difference in the size of the myofibrils [25].

Polyglucosan bodies are sometimes seen. The goal of treatment is to keep people from doing hard exercise. To rebuild injured muscle, it is recommended to eat a lot of protein and take vitamin B6 and branched-chain amino acids (leucine, isoleucine, and valine). There are two canine models for GSD type VII sickness, which may offer insights into innovative therapies.

8. Metabolic Disorders Caused by Defects in the Phosphorylase Activation System

Phosphorylase kinase system deficiencies produce a number of GSDs (GSD VIII, IX), and these will be talked about together. There are four parts to phosphorylase kinase: alpha, beta, gamma, and delta. Each part's gene is located on a distinct chromosome. The alpha and beta subunits are in charge of controlling things. The gamma subunit acts as a catalyst. The delta subunit attaches to calcium. There are two types of alpha subunit: one for muscle and one for liver. Each type is coded by a different gene on the X chromosome (Xp22.2-22.1). The gene for the beta subunit resides on chromosome 16, between q12 and q13 [26].

Muscle and testis–liver isoforms of the gamma subunit (16p12.1) exist. In the absence of adenosine monophosphate, PHKA2-related GSD type IX is the mildest GSD with modest phosphorylase activity. Hepatomegaly (92%), growth retardation (68%), motor skill delay, hypotonia, and elevated AST (56%), ALT (56%), cholesterol (76%), and triglycerides (70%), are the most prevalent symptoms between 1 and 5 years old. Hypoglycemia and fasting hyperketosis. The clinical history is usually benign, with asymptomatic adults.

The liver biopsy shows that the hepatocytes are not growing normally and are filled with glycogen. The hepatocytes are arranged in a mosaic pattern, and there may be some development of septa. Microsteatosis could be present. Electron microscopy reveals widespread monoparticulate glycogen, glycogen rosettes, and many lipid vacuoles holding glycogen particles [27]. Glycogen rosettes are visible in parallel arrays that are linked to endoplasmic reticulum membranes. This GSD has a starry-sky pattern because there are sections with finely granular, organelle-free clear zones that alternate with densely packed glycogen particles. Mitochondria are usually smaller and fewer in number. The skeletal muscle is normal. An enzyme study of liver tissue and a gene mutation analysis can both be used to make a diagnosis.

An autosomal recessive defect in the beta subunit of phosphorylase kinase causes liver and muscle PHKB-related GSD type IX. Hepatomegaly, abdominal distension, modest growth retardation, and lipidemia define it. Mild or nonexistent symptoms are common. If symptoms appear, the liver may develop serious liver disease and cirrhosis. Neurologic decline has been recorded. By optical and electron microscopy, liver and muscle biopsies indicate glycogen buildup. There are glycogen-filled lipid vacuoles. Gene mutation study and liver tissue enzyme analysis diagnose. A defect in the liver phosphorylase kinase (gamma subunit) causes autosomal recessive PHKG2-related GSD type IX. This GSD causes liver cirrhosis. Peripheral sensory neuropathy and renal tubular acidosis may occur. Gene mutation study and liver tissue enzyme analysis diagnose [28].

9. Disorder of Glycogen Storage, Type X

A defect in cyclic 3′,5′-AMP-dependent kinase (chromosome 17q23–24) causes autosomal recessive GSD type X. Symptomless hepatomegaly characterizes this condition. No glucose rises after glucagon or epinephrine. Due to glycogen deposition, liver biopsy exhibits a mosaic pattern of hepatocytes and uneven distension [29]. Possible microsteatosis and septal development. An electron microscope shows glycogen rosettes and glycogen-filled lipid vacuoles. From near-normal to thick deposits, glycogen levels vary greatly. Additionally, cytoplasmic glycogen rosettes may contain lysosomal monoparticulate glycogen. Lysosomes include monoparticulate glycogen, cell membranes, lipofuscin, and other cell components. This helps identify GSD type X from Pompe illness. Sarcolemmal glycogen in muscle [30]. Prognosis is good. Liver and skeletal muscle enzyme and gene mutation analysis aids diagnosis.

Conclusion:

It can be difficult to diagnose GSDs, particularly those with less severe phenotypes or those that affect mainly the skeletal and/or cardiac muscles. Medical professionals should be knowledgeable about GSDs together with other systems, such as the central nervous system, skeletal and/or cardiac muscles, and the liver, while making a differential diagnosis for patients of all ages. The prognosis is better when the diagnosis is made quickly and therapy is aggressive.

References:

1. Ozen H. Glycogen storage diseases: new perspectives. World J Gastroenterol 2007; 13: 2541-2553 [PMID: 17552001 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v13.i18.2541]
2. Roach PJ, Depaoli-Roach AA, Hurley TD, Tagliabracci VS. Glycogen and its metabolism: some new developments and old themes. Biochem J 2012; 441: 763-787 [PMID: 22248338 DOI: 10.1042/BJ20111416]
3. Ellingwood SS, Cheng A. Biochemical and clinical aspects of glycogen storage diseases. J Endocrinol 2018; 238: R131- R141 [PMID: 29875163 DOI: 10.1530/JOE-18-0120]
4. Chen YT, Kishnani PS, Koeberl D. Glycogen Storage Diseases. OMMBID 2019 [DOI: 10.1036/ommbid.380]
5. Saltik IN, Ozen H, Ciliv G, Koçak N, Yüce A, Gürakan F, Dinler G. Glycogen storage disease type Ia: frequency and clinical course in Turkish children. Indian J Pediatr 2000; 67: 497-501 [PMID: 10957834 DOI: 10.1007/BF02760476]
6. Kanungo S, Wells K, Tribett T, El-Gharbawy A. Glycogen metabolism and glycogen storage disorders. Ann Transl Med 2018; 6: 474 [PMID: 30740405 DOI: 10.21037/atm.2018.10.59]
7. Burda P, Hochuli M. Hepatic glycogen storage disorders: what have we learned in recent years? Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care 2015; 18: 415-421 [PMID: 26001652 DOI: 10.1097/MCO.0000000000000181]
8. Kollberg G, Tulinius M, Gilljam T, Ostman-Smith I, Forsander G, Jotorp P, Oldfors A, Holme E. Cardiomyopathy and exercise intolerance in muscle glycogen storage disease 0. N Engl J Med 2007; 357: 1507-1514 [PMID: 17928598 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa066691]
9. Lewis GM, Spencer-Peet J, Stewart KM. Infantile Hypoglycaemia due to Inherited Deficiency of Glycogen Synthetase in Liver. Arch Dis Child 1963; 38: 40-48 [PMID: 21032403 DOI: 10.1136/adc.38.197.40]
10. Orho M, Bosshard NU, Buist NR, Gitzelmann R, Aynsley-Green A, Blümel P, Gannon MC, Nuttall FQ, Groop LC. Mutations in the liver glycogen synthase gene in children with hypoglycemia due to glycogen storage disease type 0. J Clin Invest 1998; 102: 507-515 [PMID: 9691087 DOI: 10.1172/JCI2890]

11. Nuttall FQ, Gannon MC, Kubic VL, Hoyt KJ. The human liver Glycogen synthase isozyme gene is located on the short arm of chromosome 12. Genomics 1994; 19: 404-405 [PMID: 8188280 DOI: 10.1006/geno.1994.1086]
12. Hicks J, Wartchow E, Mierau G. Glycogen storage diseases: a brief review and update on clinical features, genetic abnormalities, pathologic features, and treatment. Ultrastruct Pathol 2011; 35: 183-196 [PMID: 21910565 DOI: 10.3109/01913123.2011.601404]
13. Karasawa Y, Kobayashi M, Nakano Y, et al. A case of glycogen storage disease type 1a with multiple hepatic adenomas and G72T mutation in glucose-6-phosphatase gene, and a comparison with other mutations previously reported. Am J Gastroenterol. 1998;93(9):1550–1553.
14. Poenaru L. Approach to gene therapy of glycogenosis type II (Pompe disease). Mol Genet Metab. 2000;70:163–169.
15. Kishnani PS, Howell RR. Pompe disease in infants and children. J Pediatr. 2004;144:S35–S43.
16. Van den Hout HMP, Hop W, van Diggelens OP, et al. The natural course of infantile Pompe's disease: 20 original cases compared with 133 cases from the literature. Pediatrics. 2003;112(2):332–340.
17. Lynch CM, Johnson J, Vaccaro C, Thurberg BL. High-resolution light microscopy (HRLM) and digital analysis of Pompe disease pathology. J Histochem Cytochem. 2005;53(1):63–73.
18. Phupong V, Shuangshoti S, Sutthiruangwong P, Maneesri S, Nuayboonma P, Shotelersuk V. Prenatal diagnosis of Pompe disease by electron microscopy. Arch Gynecol Obstet. 2005;271:259–261.
19. Schoser BGH, Muller-Hockert J, Horvath R, et al. Adult-onset glycogen storage disease type 2: clinico-pathological phenotype revisited. Neuropathol Appl Neurobiol. 2007:33:544–559.
20. Raben N, Fukuda T, Gilbert AL, et al. Replacing acid alphaglucosidase in Pompe disease: recombinant and transgenic enzymes are equipotent, but neither completely clears glycogen from type II muscle fibers. Mol Ther. 2005;11(1):48–56.
21. Thurberg BL, Maloney CL, Vaccaro C, et al. Characterization of pre- and post-treatment pathology after enzyme replacement therapy for Pompe disease. Lab Invest. 2006;86:1208–1220.
22. Winkel LPF, Kamphoven JHJ, van den Hout HJMP, et al. Morphological changes in muscle tissue of patients with infantile Pompe's disease receiving enzyme replacement therapy. Muscle Nerve. 2003:27:743–751.

23. Nicolino MP, Peuch J-P, Kremer EJ, et al. Adenovirusmediated transfer of the acid-alpha-glucosidase gene into fibroblasts, myoblasts and myotubules from patients with glycogen storage disease type II leads to high level expression of enzyme and corrects glycogen accumulation. Hum Mol Genet. 1998;7(11):1695–1702.
24. Demo E, Frush D, Gottfried M, et al. Glycogen storage disease type III-hepatocellular carcinoma a long-term complication? J Hepatol. 2007;46:492–498.
25. Moses SW, Parvari R. The variable presentations of glycogen storage disease type IV: a review of clinical, enzymatic and molecular studies. Curr Mol Med. 2002;177–188.
26. Vucic S, Pamphlett R, Wills EJ, Yiannikas C. Polyglucosan body disease myopathy: an unusual presentation. Muscle Nerve. 2007;35:536–539.
27. Raben N, Dannon M, Lu N, et al. Surprises of genetic engineering: a possible model of polyglucosan body disease. Neurology. 2001;56:1739–1745.
28. Fowler DJ, Anderson G, Vellodi A, Malone M, Sebire NJ. Electron microscopy of chorionic villus samples for prenatal diagnosis of lysosomal storage disorders. Ultrastruct Pathol. 2007;31:15–21.
29. DiMauro S, Andreu AL, Bruno C, Hadjigeorgiou GM. Myophosphorylase deficiency (glycogenosis type V; McArdle disease). Curr Mol Med. 2002;2:189–196.
30. Gordon N. Glycogenosis type V or McArdle's disease. Dev Med Child Neurol. 2003;45:640–644.

Emerging Trends in Pharma and Biomedical Science Volume II

ISBN: 978-93-48620-25-5

About Editors

Dr. Aarti S. Zanwar is an Associate Professor in the Department of Pharmacy at Sumandeep Vidyapeeth Deemed to be University, Vadodara, Gujarat, with over 16 years of academic and research experience in Pharmaceutical Chemistry and Analysis. She has published 45 research articles, authored 12 book chapters and two books, and holds two patents. Her research focuses on developing and validating analytical methods using HPLC, HPTLC, and UV spectrophotometry for synthetic drugs and phytochemicals. She has guided over 13 postgraduate students and is actively involved in process validation and nutraceutical formulation development. Dr. Zanwar is an active member of professional bodies including MPSC and APTI, contributing significantly to pharmaceutical education, research, and the advancement of analytical techniques in drug and natural product analysis.

Dr. Emad Salaam Abood Shlakaa, born on June 1, 1991, in Najaf, Iraq, holds a Ph.D. in Medical Physical Chemistry from the University of Kufa. He is the Vice President for Scientific Affairs at the University of Hilla and an Assistant Professor in the Department of Medical Physics. With extensive teaching and research experience, he has published over 40 papers indexed in Scopus. Dr. Emad has actively participated in numerous local and international conferences and is a member of several international scientific societies. His research primarily focuses on nanomaterials and advanced chemical sensors, contributing significantly to innovations in medical physics and chemistry. His dedication to academic excellence and scientific advancement continues to inspire students and researchers in Iraq and beyond.

Raghad Ahmed Hussien Alshamary, born on June 22, 1993, in Karbala, Iraq, holds a Master's degree in Microbiology and is currently pursuing a Ph.D. in Nanobiotechnology. She serves as a Lecturer at the University of Hilla, where she contributes to both academic teaching and departmental administration. With a strong foundation in microbiology and emerging nanobiotechnological approaches, she has published her research in Scopus-indexed journals. Raghad actively participates in various scientific conferences and workshops, enhancing her academic network and research impact. She is affiliated with several regional and international academic organizations, reflecting her commitment to professional development and collaborative research. Her dedication towards integrating microbiology with nanobiotechnology promises significant contributions to biomedical and environmental applications in the future.

Dr. Shrikant Verma is a researcher in the Department of Personalized and Molecular Medicine at Era University, Lucknow, U.P., with expertise in Molecular Biology, Infectious Diseases, Genome Analysis, and Pharmacogenomics, advancing Personalized Medicine. With over five years of research experience, he has published 43 articles, reviews, books, and book chapters in reputed journals and academic platforms. He was honoured with the prestigious Young Scientist Award by the Indian Society of Personalized Medicine for his impactful contributions. Dr. Verma is a life member of several prominent scientific societies, reflecting his commitment to collaborative research and continuous learning. His current focus is on translational research, integrating pharmacogenomics into clinical practice to enhance precision treatment strategies for the Indian population, aiming to bridge the gap between laboratory research and patient care through Personalized Medicine.

Bhumi Publishing

ISBN 978-93-48620-25-5
9 789348 620255